

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

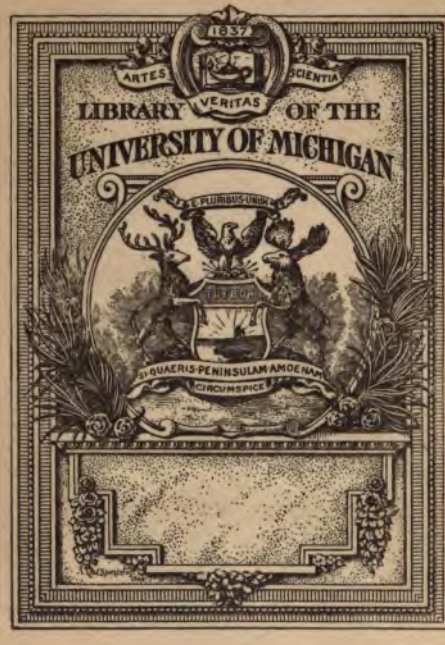
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

A 403713


1837
ARTES
VERITAS
SCIENTIA
LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
E PLURIBUS UNUM
SI QUAERIS PENINSULAM AMOENAM
CIRCUMSPICE

F
102(
.R88
185

HISTORY OF CANADA

FOR

THE USE OF SCHOOLS

AND

FAMILIES.

BY J. ROY.

MONTREAL:
H. RAMSAY.
1856.

MONTREAL: H. RAMSAY.

TO TEACHERS.

This little work has been composed to meet an actual want. When teaching in the western part of the Province, the writer found that there was no History of Canada in the English Language at all fit for the School-room; and, having been favoured with the assistance of some gentlemen of literary standing, and the free use of the ample materials contained in the Library of the Legislative Assembly, she has ventured to put forth this little work, pleading as her excuse the absolute necessity of providing such a source of information for British American Youth. Could the work have been confined to the higher classes of Learners, it would have been of a more intellectual character; but it was judged necessary to adapt it to the capacity of the less advanced by dividing and simplifying the Questions, as there is no primary history to introduce it.

The author would take the liberty to suggest that the Geographical part should be used by the pupil as a Reading-Book while pursuing the study of the Historical parts, and that the Map should be constantly referred to in both, as she has ever found that Geography illustrates History as much as History illuminates Geography.

230863



CONTENTS.

PART I.

EARLY VOYAGES, CONQUESTS, AND DISCOVERIES IN NORTH AMERICA.

CHAPTER I.

PAGE.

Discovery of America by Columbus, ... 1
Discoveries of John and Sebastian Cabot, ... 5
Voyage of Gaspar Cortereal, ... 7
" of Elliott and Ashurst, ... 8
" of Giovanni Verrazani, ... 8
" of Jacques Cartier, ... 11

CHAPTER II.

Voyages, Conquests, and Discoveries, which took place in the Southern parts of North America, from the Discovery of Columbus to that of Jacques Cartier.
" of Vasco Nunez de Balboa, ... 14
" of Juan Ponce de Leon, ... 15
" of De Allyon, ... 16
Conquest of Mexico—Cortez, ... 18
Voyage of Ferdinand Magellan, ... 18
" of Pamphilio de Narvaez, ... 19
" of Ferdinand de Soto, ... 19

PART II.

CANADA UNDER THE FRENCH.

CHAPTER I.

Expeditions under Cartier, 1534—5, ... 23
" under Roberval, 1540, ... 30
English Discoveries under Frobisher, 1576, ... 33
French Voyages under De la Roche, Pontgravé, and Chauvin, 1598, ... 33
English Discoveries under Bartholomew Gosnold, 1602, . 35

CHAPTER II.

Voyages under De Chaste and Champlain, 1603, . . 38
" under the Sieur de Monts, 1604, . . . 39
Return of Champlain to Canada, 1608, ... 43

CHAPTER III.

PAGE.

Administration of Champlain, 1632, ... 58
" of M. De Montmagny, 1634, ... 61
" of M. D'Aillebout, 1647, ... 63
" of D'Argenson, 1668, ... 67
" of D'Avangour, 1661, ... 67
Government of M. de Mesy, 1663, ... 70

CHAPTER IV.

Government of the Marquis de Tracy, 1665, ... 73
An Account of the Various Settlements on the American Continent at this period, ... 76

CHAPTER V.

Government of M. de Courcelles, 1668, ... 86
" of M. de Frontenac, 1672, ... 88
" of M. de La Barre, 1682, ... 91
" of M. de Denonville, 1685, ... 93
" of M. de Frontenac, 1689, (second time.) . 97

CHAPTER VI.

Continuation of M. de Frontenac's Administration, 1691, . 104
Administration of M. de Caillières, 1698, ... 108
" of M. de Vaudreuil, 1703, ... 109
Charlevoix's Description of Canada in 1720-1, . . . 112

CHAPTER VII.

Administration of the Marquis de Beauharnois, 1726, . 118
" of M. de Galissoniere, 1747, ... 120
" of the Marquis du Quesne, 1752, . . . 120
" of the Sieur de Vaudreuil, 1755, . . . 121
Capture of Quebec by the Army under Wolfe, 1759, . . 127

PART III.

CANADA UNDER THE BRITISH.

CHAPTER I.

History of Canada from 1759 to the Peace of 1763, . 134
" from 1763 to the Declaration of Independence by the United States in 1774, . 138
" from 1774 to the Declaration of War in 1812, ... 140

CHAPTER II.

PAGE.
General History from 1812 to the Peace of 1814 and 1815, . 152
" from 1815 to 1832, ... 163
" from 1832 (including the first Insurrection) to 1838, ... 167

CHAPTER III.

Insurrection in Upper Canada, 1837, ... 175
Mission of Lord Durham, 1838 182
From the Breaking-out of the Second Insurrection in 1838 to the Union of the Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada in 1841, ... 184

PART IV.

GEOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION OF CANADA.

CHAPTER I.

Extent of British America, ... 200
Canada and its boundaries, ... 201
Its Mountains, ... 203
Its inland waters, ... 204
Lake Superior, ... 204
Lake Huron, ... 206

CHAPTER II.

Lake Huron and Huron District, ... 213
The Chippewas of Saugeen, ... 216
Lake St. Clair, ... 217
Indian Settlements, ... 217
Lake Erie, ... 218
French Settlements on the Detroit, ... 219
Indian Settlements near Amhertsburg, ... 220
Ports on Lake Erie, ... 222
Grand River, ... 223
Niagara River, ... 225
" Falls, ... 227
Queenston and Lewiston, ... 230
Ports on the Niagara, ... 230

CHAPTER III.

PAGE.
Lake Ontario, ... 233
Hamilton, ... 234
Toronto, ... 235
Lake Simcoe, ... 236
Bay of Quinté, ... 237
Kingston, ... 239
Lake of the Thousand Isles, ... 239
St. Regis, ... 240
Cornwall Canal, ... 240
Beauharnois Canal, ... 242
The Ottawa, ... 243
French River, ... 243
Chaudière Falls, ... 245
Rideau Canal, ... 245
Grenville Canal, ... 246
Lake of the Two Mountains, ... 247
St. Anne's, ... 247
Caughnawaga, ... 248
Lachine Canal, ... 248

CHAPTER IV.

Montreal, ... 251
The Richelieu, ... 253
Lake Champlain, ... 254
Lake St. Peter, ... 254
Three Rivers, ... 257
Quebec, ... 258
The Fall of Montmorency, ... 261
The St. Lawrence, ... 261
The Saguenay, ... 264
Climate of Canada, ... 265
The State of Religion and Education, ... 267
The Government of Canada, ... 267
The Counties, Cities, Towns and Villages in Upper Canada with the population in 1851, ... 268
The Counties, Cities, Towns and Villages in Lower Canada with the population in 1851, ... 271
Table of Proper Names, ... 277

HISTORY OF CANADA.

PART I.

VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES,

EXTENDING FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA, BY COLUMBUS, IN 1492, TO THE DISCOVERY OF THE ST. LAWRENCE, BY JACQUES CARTIER, IN 1535—EMBRACING A PERIOD OF 43 YEARS.

CHAPTER I.

EARLY VOYAGES, CONQUESTS, AND DISCOVERIES IN NORTH AMERICA.

DIVISIONS.

I. Discovery of America by Columbus.—II. Discoveries of John and Sebastian Cabot.—III. Voyages of Gaspar Cortereal—IV. Hugh Elliott and Thomas Ashurst.—V. Giovanni Verrazani.—IV. Jacques Cartier.

I. DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS.—1. The existence of a new world, if not known to the ancients, was at least suspected by them. It is certain that an idea was entertained, that it would be easy to sail from the western coast of Spain to the shores of India. They had,

however, no proper notion of the magnitude of the globe, and thought that a few days would be sufficient for such a voyage. The existence of an immense continent between their point of departure and the extreme shores of India was beyond their conception. Neither did the first navigators expect to make such a discovery; it may be said that they but stumbled upon America in their route to the shores of Cathay or India. They were anxious to obtain a readier access to this country, because the commerce of these tropical regions had even then enriched several of the commercial nations of Europe.

2. There is some reason to believe that the ancient writers, Aristotle, Strabo, Pliny and Seneca entertained the opinion mentioned above. Strabo alone seems to have imagined the distance between the two continents; he says "that the ocean encompassed the whole earth; that in the east it washes the coast of India, and in the west those of Africa and Spain, and that, if the vastness of the Atlantic did not hinder, they might soon sail from one to the other." Seneca, in one of his tragedies, says "there will come a time in after ages, when the ocean will loose the bonds of matter, and a vast country will be discovered." And, in a book ascribed to Aristotle, the Carthaginians are said to have discovered, far beyond the Pillars of Hercules (the Strait of Gibraltar), an island, in the Atlantic Ocean, of great extent and fertility, watered by large and magnificent rivers, but entirely uninhabited. The Tyrians are said to have evinced some intention of occupying this island, but were prevented by the jealousy of the Carthaginians.

3. The Welsh too claim to have made the discovery of America about the year 1170, when they say Madoc, one of their princes, sailed to the new world, and then established a colony. There is no probability in this tradition, as the Welsh were not, in the age of Madoc, a naval people, and must have been ignorant of all navigation, except that of rivers and coasts.

4. There is far more reason to believe that the Icelanders knew something of the western world. It is asserted that an Iceland bark, in the early part of the eleventh century, having been driven south-west from Greenland by adverse winds, touched upon the coast of Labrador, that subsequent voyages were made, and that colonies were established upon some portions of the country which is now called British America.

5. These traditions, however, do not in the least detract from the honour so universally ascribed to Christopher Columbus, who is, by the common consent of the world, called the discoverer of America.

6. This remarkable man was born about the middle of the fifteenth century, and entered early in life into the service of the Portuguese, who were then actively engaged in commercial pursuits. During his frequent voyages he began to reflect on the possibility of reaching the eastern world by a different route from any that had been taken. After much study, he became convinced that, by sailing westerly, he could more readily approach the farther boundary of the country he sought than by any other route. It is said that, during some of these voyages, he met with

some of the natives of Iceland, from whom he heard of the discovery of a continent to the west, which he probably supposed to be the eastern shore of Cathay.

7. Determined to ascertain the truth by a personal investigation, he first applied for aid to his own country, Genoa, but without success. His next application was to the court of Portugal, with no better result. His final resort was to the court of Spain, then under the separate government of Ferdinand of Arragon, and Isabella of Castile. The King refused to countenance his design. The Queen, however, more wise and liberal, consented to patronize it, furnishing the means of accomplishing the voyage from her own treasury, and actually selling her jewels to supply the deficiency in the national resources.

8. On Friday, the 3rd of August, 1492, Columbus sailed from Palos, a port of Spain, and on the 12th of October, to his unspeakable gratification, he made his first discovery in the New World. This was one of the Bahama Islands called by the natives Guanahani, named by Columbus St. Salvador, and afterwards, by some unpardonable caprice, called by the English Cat Island. He landed the same day, took possession of it in the name of the Spanish sovereigns, and assumed the titles of Admiral and Viceroy, which had been awarded to him before he sailed from Europe.

9. Leaving this island, he passed on to another where he landed, and which he named Conception. On the 17th he reached one, which he called Ferdinando. In modern maps it is named Exuma. Pursuing his voyage, he dis-

covered the island called by him Isabella, and, by more recent navigators, Long Island. He afterwards discovered the important island of Cuba, and Hispaniola or St. Domingo, now called Hayti. Here he built a fortress, and, leaving thirty-nine men in possession of it, he sailed for Spain. He arrived there, after a stormy and dangerous voyage, on the 15th of March, 1493, having taken not quite seven months and a half to accomplish this momentous enterprize.

II.—Discoveries of John and Sebastian Cabot. —1. Several of the European nations claim the honour of having discovered *The Continent* of North America. There can be no doubt, however, that England has the best right to it, for, in 1496, after Columbus had returned to Europe, Henry VII. fitted out a small fleet of ships, and gave a commission to John Cabot, a celebrated Venetian navigator, and his sons, to explore for—what Columbus was in search of—a north-west passage to the Indies or China. The result of this voyage was, doubtless, the discovery of the North American continent.

2. They sailed from the port of Bristol, in the spring of 1497, and, on the 3rd of July, discovered the coast of Labrador. The opposite island, now called Newfoundland, they called St. Johns, having landed there on St. John's day. To the mainland they gave the name of *Terra primum vista*—or Primavista (first seen.) The English navigators thus reached the continent of North America only five years after Columbus had discovered the West

Indies, and more than a twelve-month before that celebrated man had touched at any part of the continent.

3. The adventurers appear to have penetrated into Hudson's Bay. They sailed as far as lat. 67°, 50′ north. After exploring the Gulf of St. Lawrence, they performed an extensive voyage along the eastern coast as far south as Virginia, and then, anxious to announce their success, returned to England, where John Cabot received the honour of knighthood for his discoveries.

4. Sebastian Cabot became a much greater navigator than his father, and made three subsequent voyages to the New World, but no settlement was effected on its shores. In one of these voyages he is said to have discovered the beautiful country now called Florida, which was afterwards visited by Ponce de Leon, and taken possession of by the Spaniards. In 1526, having entered the service of Spain, he explored the river La Plata, and part of the coast of South America. Returning to England, during the reign of Edward VI., he was made Grand Pilot of England, and received a pension of £166 10s. 4d. per annum for his services.

5. It is much to be regretted that neither Columbus nor Cabot was immortalized in the lands they discovered by having them called after their names, and that Amerigo Vespuccio, an obscure drawer of charts, should, by a bold usurpation, have called it America. The noble name of Columbia ought to have been the general designation of the Western World.

6. It is a remarkable fact that England was one of the

first nations that entered into the scheme of Columbus; indeed his brother Bartholomew had so far interested our sagacious monarch, Henry VII., that he made proposals to carry it into execution; but Columbus was then in treaty with Isabella, and four years afterwards, when he was just upon the point of relinquishing all hopes from that quarter, and renewing his application to England, Isabella decided in his favour. Thus it appears that England had the honour of first admitting the proposals of Columbus; and that it was by a mere accident the discovery of the West Indies was subsequently made by Columbus, in 1492, under Spanish and not under British auspices.

III. GASPAR CORTEREAL.—1. In 1500, Gaspar Cortereal, a Portuguese gentleman, visited the coast, and pursued the track of Sir John Cabot. He accomplished nothing, however, except the kidnapping of more than fifty of the natives, whom, on his return, he sold to slavery.

2. Cortereal sailed on a second voyage, with a determination to pursue his discovery, and bring back a cargo of slaves. Not returning as soon as was expected, his brother Michael sailed in search of him, but no accounts of either ever again reached Portugal.

3. The King of Portugal had such an affection for these two young gentlemen that he is said to have fitted out, at his own expense, an expedition to go in search of them, which returned without any information as to the manner or place of their death. In an old map, published in 1508, the Labrador Coast is called Terra Cortereälis: and the entrance to the Gulf of St. Lawrence was long known to the

Portuguese by the name of the Gulf of the Two Brothers.

IV. HUGH ELLIOTT AND THOMAS ASHURST.—1. In 1502, Hugh Elliott and Thomas Ashurst, merchants of Bristol, with two other gentlemen, obtained a patent from Henry to establish colonies in the newly discovered countries; and in the following year Henry fitted out another expedition, which sailed in 1507, but was not attended with any important result.

2. Various circumstances combined to withdraw the successors of Henry from the brilliant career that had been opened to them in the new world. They were succeeded in it by France, and it is singular that the settlement of the greatest part of what is now British America was effected by that power.

3. As early as 1517 the English, French, Spanish and Portuguese had so far made their discoveries in the New World useful that they had established a successful fishery at Newfoundland, in which they had fifty-seven vessels engaged.

V. GIOVANNI VERRAZANI.—1. In the latter part of 1523, Francis I. of France, a monarch deeply captivated with the love of glory, fitted out a squadron of four ships, the command of which he gave to Giovanni Verrazani, a Florentine navigator of great skill and celebrity. Soon after the vessels had sailed, three of them were so damaged in a storm that they were compelled to return; but Verrazani proceeded in a single vessel, with a determination to make new discoveries. Sailing from Madeira in a westerly direction, he reached the coast of America, probably in

the latitude of Wilmington, the principal seaport in North Carolina.

2. After exploring the coast for some distance, north and south, without being able to find a harbour, he was obliged to send a boat on shore to open an intercourse with the natives. The savages at first fled, but, soon recovering their confidence, they entered into an amicable traffic with the strangers.

3. At one place, by the desire of Verrazani, a young sailor had undertaken to swim to land, and accost the natives, but, when he saw the crowds which thronged the beach, he repented of his purpose, and, although within a few yards of the landing-place, his courage failed, and he attempted to turn back. At this moment the water only reached his waist; but, overcome with terror and exhaustion, he had scarcely strength to cast his presents and trinkets upon the beach, when a high wave threw him senseless on the shore. The savages ran immediately to his assistance, took him up in their arms, and carried him a short distance from the sea. Great was his terror, when, upon coming to his senses, he found himself in their power. Stretching his hands towards the ship, he uttered piercing cries, to which the natives replied by loud yells, intending, as he afterwards found, to re-assure him. They then carried him to the foot of a hill, stripped him naked, turned his face to the sun, and kindled a large fire near him.

4. He was now fully impressed with the horrible thought, that they were about to sacrifice him to the Sun. His companions on board, unable to render him any assis-

tance, were of the same opinion; they thought, to use Verrazani's own words, "that the natives were going to roast and eat him." Their fears, however, were soon turned to gratitude and astonishment; the savages dried his clothes, warmed him, and showed him every mark of kindness, caressing and patting his white skin with apparent surprise. They then dressed him, conducted him to the beach, tenderly embraced him, and, pointing to the vessel, removed to a little distance, to show that he was at liberty to return to his friends.

5. Proceeding north, the voyagers landed, probably near the city of New York, where, prompted by curiosity, they kidnapped and carried away an Indian child—a sad return for the kindness displayed by the natives to the young man thrown upon their shores. It is supposed that Verrazani entered the haven of Newport, in Rhode Island, where he remained fifteen days. Here the natives were liberal, friendly and confiding; and the country was the richest he had yet seen.

6. Verrazani proceeded still further north, and explored the coast as far as Newfoundland, but he found the natives of the northern regions hostile and jealous, and unwilling to traffic except for weapons of war. He gave to the whole region the name of La Nouvelle France, and took possession of it in the name of his sovereign.

7. Although there is no evidence that Verrazani even approached any part of Canada, there has been a tradition, extant in this country from an early period, that the river St. Lawrence was the scene of his death. But this story

of his having been massacred with his crew, and afterwards devoured by the savages, is absolute fable, and does great injustice to the Red men of Canada.

VI. JACQUES CARTIER.—1. The celebrated Jacques Cartier succeeded Verrazani. He explored the north-east coast carefully, and, passing through the Strait of Belleisle, traversed the great gulf of the St. Lawrence, and arrived in the bay of Chaleurs in July. He was delighted with the peaceable and friendly conduct of the natives, "who," says Hakluyt, "with one of their boats, came unto us, and brought us pieces of seals ready sodden, putting them upon pieces of wood: then, retiring themselves, they would make signs unto us, that they did give them to us."

2. From this hospitable place, where the natives seem to have displayed some of the politeness of modern society, Jacques Cartier proceeded to Gaspé Bay, where he erected a cross thirty feet high, with a shield bearing the three fleurs-de-lis of France, thus taking possession in the name of Francis the First.

3. He carried off two natives from Gaspé, who were of great use to him on his succeeding voyage. It appears, however, that it was with their own consent, as they allowed themselves to be clothed in shirts, coloured coats, and caps, and to have a copper chain placed about their neck, "whereat they were greatly contented, and gave their old clothes to their fellows that went back again." Cartier coasted along the northern shores of the gulf, when, meeting with boisterous weather, he made sail for France, and arrived at St. Malo on the 5th of September.

4. This celebrated navigator deserves especial notice, inasmuch as he was the first who explored the shores of Canada to any considerable extent, and was the very first European who became acquainted with the existence of Hochelaga, and in 1535 pushed his way through all obstacles, till he discovered and entered the village, which occupied the very spot on which now stands the City of Montreal.

Questions on the Chapter First.

Of what does Chapter 1st treat? What are the divisions of Chapter 1st?

I.—1. What is said of the New World? What idea did the ancients entertain relative to the West? Had they a proper idea of the magnitude of the Globe? Of the existence of a western continent? What is said of the first navigators? Why did they wish to gain readier access to India?

2. What is said of Strabo? What is said of Seneca? What is said of Arisotle and the Carthaginians? What is said of the Tyrians?

3. What is said of the Welsh claim? Why is this considered to be improbable?

4. What is said of the Icelandic claim? What is asserted respecting an Icelandic vessel?

5. Do these claims detract from the merit of Columbus?

6. When was he born? Upon what subject did he begin to reflect? Of what did he become convinced? With whom is he said to have met?

7. What was his conduct? Where did he next apply? What was his final resort? What was the conduct of the King? What was the conduct of the Queen?

8. When did Columbus sail, and when did he make his first discovery? What land was it that he first discovered? In whose name did he take possession of it, and what titles did he assume?

9. What other islands did he discover? What did he build in St. Domingo? When did he arrive in Spain?

II.—1. What is said of the European nations? What country has just claim to the discovery of the Continent, and why? What was the result of Cabot's voyage?

2. From what port did the Cabots sail, and what land did they discover? Why did they call the opposite island St. Johns? What name did they give to the mainland? How long after Columbus visited the West Indies did the English navigators reach the continent of North America?
3. How far north did they sail? How far south?
4. What is said of Sebastian Cabot? What southern country is he said to have discovered? What did he explore? What was he made, and what pension did he receive?
5. What is to be regretted? What ought to have been the designation of the Western World?
6. Give an account of the agreement entered into by Henry VII. with Bartholomew Columbus? What appears from this account?

III.—1. Who was Gaspar Cortereal? What did he accomplish?
2. What is said of Cortereal? What is said of his brother?
3. What is said of the King of Portugal? By what names were the coast of Labrabor and the Gulf of St. Lawrence known to the Portuguese?

IV.—1. Who obtained a patent from King Henry? What did Henry fit out?
2. What is said of the successors of Henry? By whom were they followed?
3. What is said of the fisheries of Newfoundland?

V.—1. Give an account of the voyage of Verrazani. What happened to three of the vessels? In what latitude did he reach the American coast?
2. What is said of his first landing and intercourse with the natives?
3. What story is told of a young sailor? What happened to him? What was the conduct of the Indians?
4. What idea now took possession of the sailor, and of his shipmates? How were their fears removed?
5. Where did the voyagers land, and what disgraceful action did they commit? What port is Verrazani supposed to have entered?
6. How far north did he proceed, and what is said of the natives? What name did he give to these regions?
7. What tradition has been extant in Canada from an early period? Is this story true?

VI.—1. Give an account of the first voyage of Jacques Cartier? Repeat what is said by an old historian.
2. To what place did he next proceed, and what did he do?
3. Give an account of his conduct to the natives of Gaspé. What route did he take, and when did he arrive in France?
4. Why does this celebrated navigator deserve our especial notice?

CHAPTER II.

VOYAGES, CONQUESTS, AND DISCOVERIES WHICH TOOK PLACE IN THE SOUTHERN PARTS OF NORTH AMERICA, FROM THE TIME OF THE DISCOVERY OF COLUMBUS TO THAT OF JACQUES CARTIER.

DIVISIONS.

I. Vasco Nunez de Balboa.—II. Juan Ponce de Léon.—III. De Allyon.—IV. Fernando Cortez.—V. Ferdinand Magellan.—VI. Pamphilio de Narvaez.—VII. Ferdinand de Soto.

I. VASCO NUNEZ DE BALBOA.—1. During the time that discoveries were prosecuted by the English and French in the north, the principal islands in the West Indies were colonized, and subjected to Spanish authority.

2. The eastern coast of Yucatan was discovered in 1506 and in 1510 the first colony was planted the Isthmus of Darien. Soon after this, Vasco Nunez de Balboa, who was governor of the colony, crossed the isthmus, on the western side of the continent, and from a high mountain discovered the ocean, which, being seen in a southerly direction at first, received the name of the South Sea.

II. JUAN PONCE DE LEON.—1. In 1512, Juan Ponce de Leon, an aged veteran, who had been governor of Porto

Note.—The Teacher may pass this Chapter until the second repetition, as it relates to the south, and does not interfere with the *History of Canada.*

Rico, fitted out three ships for a voyage of discovery, hoping to find in a neighbouring island a fountain which was said to possess the remarkable properties of restoring the youth and perpetuating the life of any one who should bathe in its stream, and drink of its waters. Of course this wonderful fountain was not to be found, but, after cruising for sometime amongst the Bahamas, he discovered a country, to which, from the abundance of flowers with which it was adorned, and from its being first seen on Easter Sunday, which the Spaniards call *Pascua Florida*, he gave the name of Florida.

2. A few years later, having been appointed governor of this country, he landed on its shores, but was mortally wounded in a contest with the natives.

3. Although this fine country was thus visited and named by the Spaniards, there is good reason to believe, as already stated, that it was first discovered by Sebastian Cabot, in his exploration of the eastern coast of America.

III. De Allyon.—1. Soon after the defeat of Ponce de Leon in Florida, De Allyon, a judge of St. Domingo, with several others, dispatched two vessels to the Bahamas, in quest of labourers for their plantations and mines. Being driven northward, they anchored at the mouth of Cambahee river, which they named the Jordan, and the country Chicora. This country was afterwards colonized by the English, and received the name of Carolina.

2. Here the natives treated the strangers with great kindness, and freely visited the ships, but, when a sufficient number was below decks, the perfidious Spaniards

closed the hatches, and set sail for St. Domingo. One of the returning ships was lost, and most of the Indian prisoners in the other, sullenly refusing food, died of famine and melancholy.

3. Having received the appointment of governor of Chicora, De Allyon returned to complete the conquest of the country when his principal vessel was lost. Proceeding a little further north, many of the Spaniards were induced to visit a village where they were cut off by the natives, in revenge for their former treachery. De Allyon's vessel was attacked, and the few survivors, in dismay, hastened back to St. Domingo.

IV. CONQUEST OF MEXICO.—FERNANDO CORTEZ. —1. The northern coast of Yucatan was explored by Francisco Fernandez de Cordova in 1517. He found the natives bold and warlike, decently clad, and living in large edifices of stones. They showed the most determined opposition to the Spaniards, and obliged Cordova to return to Cuba, where he soon after died.

2. Under the auspices of Velasquez, governor of Cuba, Juan de Grigalva explored a part of the southern coast of Mexico, and obtained a large amount of treasure by trafficking with the natives. Velasquez, finding himself enriched by the result, and being elated with success, determined to undertake the conquest of the wealthy country which had been discovered, and hastily fitted out an armament for the purpose. Not being able to accompany the expedition in person, he gave the command to Fernando Cortez, who landed in Tabasco, a southern prov-

ince of Mexico. With great resolution, Cortez destroyed his vessels, in order that his men should be left without any resources but their own valour, and commenced his march towards the Mexican capital.

3. Making his way thither, with varied success, he reached the vast plain of Mexico. Numerous villages and cultivated fields extended as far as the eye could reach, and in the middle of the plain, partly encompassing a large lake, and partly built on islands within it, stood the city of Mexico, adorned with its numerous temples and turrets. Montezuma, the king, received the Spaniards with great magnificence, assigned them a spacious and elegant edifice to live in, supplied all their wants, and bestowed upon them all presents of great value.

4. Cortez having basely betrayed Montezuma, the rage of the Mexicans was so roused that they attacked the Spaniards, regardless of their monarch's presence, and accidentally wounded him. Struck with remorse, they fled, and Montezuma, scorning to survive, rejected the attentions of the Spaniards and, refusing to take any nourishment, soon terminated his wretched days. Cortez, by his boldness and the discipline of his little army, gained so decided an advantage that the whole host of the Mexicans, panic-struck, fled to the mountains, and allowed him to retreat safely to the shore.

5. Having received supplies and reinforcements, he returned again in 1520, and after various successes and reverses, and a prolonged siege of the capital, in August, 1521, the city yielded, the fate of the empire was decided, and Mexico became a province of Spain.

V. FERDINAND MAGELLAN.—1. A very important event, which took place about the same time, demands our notice, as it forms the final demonstration of the theory of Columbus; namely, the first circumnavigation of the globe, by Ferdinand Magellan, which was accomplished in three years and twenty-eight days.

2. This voyage was performed under the auspices of Charles V. of Spain. Magellan set sail from Seville, in Spain, in August, 1519. After spending several months on the coast of South America, searching for a passage to the Indies, he continued his voyage to the south, passed through the strait that bears his name, and, after sailing three months and twenty-one days through an unknown ocean, he discovered a cluster of fertile islands, which he named the Ladrones, or the Islands of Thieves, from the thievish disposition of the natives. The fair weather, and favourable winds which he experienced, induced him to bestow on this ocean the name of the Pacific, which it still retains.

3. Proceeding from the Ladrones, he discovered the islands which were afterwards called the Philippines in honour of Philip, King of Spain, who subjected them forty years after the voyage of Magellan. Here, in a contest with the natives, Magellan was killed, and the expedition was prosecuted under other commanders. After taking in a cargo of spices at the Moluccas, the only vessel of the squadron, then fit for a long voyage, sailed for Europe by the way of the Cape of Good Hope, and arrived in Spain in September, 1522.

VI. PAMPHILIO DE NARVAEZ.—1. In 1526, Pamphilo de Narvaez solicited and obtained the appointment of governor of Florida, and landed there with a force of three hundred men, when, erecting the royal standard, he took possession of the country for the crown of Spain.

2. During two months the Spaniards wandered about in the hope of finding some wealthy empire like Mexico or Peru, but their hopes were disappointed. They returned to the sea-coast, where they constructed some boats, in which they set sail, but, being driven out into the gulf by a storm, Narvaez, and nearly all his companions, perished.

VII. FERDINAND DE SOTO.—1. Notwithstanding the melancholy result of the expedition of De Narvaez, it was still believed that wealthy regions might be discovered in the interior of Florida. Ambitious of finding them, Ferdinand de Soto, a Spanish cavalier of noble birth, applied to the Spanish emperor for permission to undertake the conquest of Florida at his own risk and expense.

2. The emperor not only granted his request but appointed him governor for life of Florida, and also of the island of Cuba. Leaving his wife to govern Cuba, he embarked for Florida, and early in June, 1539, his fleet anchored in Tampa Bay.

3. Sending most of his vessels back again to Cuba, he commenced his march into the interior. After wandering for more than five months through unexplored and uncultivated regions, he arrived at the fertile country east of the Flint river, where he passed the winter.

4. At the end of five months he broke up his camp, and

set out for a remote country lying to the north-east, which was said to be governed by a woman, and to abound in gold and silver. To his great disappointment, after penetrating, it is supposed, nearly to the Savannah river, he found indeed the territory of the princess, but the fancied gold proved to be copper, and the silver only thin plates of mica.

5. Hearing there was gold in a region still farther north, he dispatched two horsemen with Indian guides to visit the country of the Cherokees, but they returned, bringing with them a few specimens of copper, but none of gold or silver. He then led his party through the vallies of the Alabama, until they arrived at Mauville,* a fortified Indian town near the junction of the Alabama and Tombigbee. Here was fought one of the most bloody battles known in Indian warfare. Many of the Spaniards fell, many lost their horses, and all their baggage was consumed in the flames. The contest lasted nine hours, several thousand Indians were slain, and their village laid in ashes. Not dismayed by this opposition, and determined not to return till he had crowned his enterprise with success, De Soto again advanced into the interior, and passed his second winter in the country of the Chickasaws near the Yazoo river.

6. Early in the spring, De Soto resumed his march, until he reached the Mississippi, which he crossed at the lowest Chickasaw bluff. Thence he continued north, until he ar-

* Mauville, whence Mobile derives its name.

rived in the southern part of the State of Missouri. After traversing the country west of the Mississippi for two or three hundred miles, he passed the winter on the banks of the Wachita. In the spring, he passed down that river to the Mississippi, where he was taken sick and died; his faithful followers wrapped his body in a mantle, and placing it in a rustic coffin, in the stillness of midnight, silently sunk it in the middle of the stream.

7. The remnant of the party was constrained to return, and, having passed the winter at the mouth of the Red River, they embarked the next summer in large boats which they had constructed, and in seventeen days reached the Gulf of Mexico. They continued along the coast, and in the month of September, 1543, arrived half-naked, and famishing with hunger, at a Spanish settlement near the mouth of the river Panuco in Mexico.

8. It was about the same time that De Soto commenced these investigations in the south, and in the valley of the Mississippi, that Jacques Cartier sailed up the St. Lawrence, and made the first settlement in Canada—to the history of which country we will now return.

Questions on Chapter Second.

Of what does this Chapter treat? What are the divisions of this Chapter?

I.—1. What nation colonized the principal islands in the West Indies?

2. What is said of the discovery and colonization of Yucatan? By whom was the Southern Ocean first discovered and named?

II.—1. By whom was an expedition fitted out—and for what purpose? What success attended his expedition?
2. What was the result of his second voyage?
3. By whom is Florida said to have been discovered?

III.—1. What is said of the enterprize of De Allyon? Of the discovery of Carolina?
2. Of the kindness of the natives, and the perfidy of the Spaniards? What was the fate of the prisoners?
3. Give an account of his second voyage and its result.

IV.—1. When and by whom was Yucatan explored? What is said of the natives?
2. By whom were designs of conquest formed? What is said of Velasquez? Give an account of the invasion of Mexico by Cortez. Why did he destroy his vessels?
2. What place did he reach? Describe the city of Mexico. How were the Spaniards treated?
What is said of Cortez and the Mexicans? What is said of Montezuma's death? Give an account of the retreat of the Spaniards from Mexico.
5. Give an account of the final conquest of Mexico.

V.—1. What other important event requires notice?
2. Under whose patronage did he sail, and when? Give an account of the voyage, embracing the first circumnavigation of the Globe. Why did he give to the Ocean, over which he sailed, the name of the Pacific?
3. What islands did he next discover? What happened? What was the termination of this expedition?

VI.—1. What is said of Pamphilio de Narvaez?
2. Of the wanderings of the Spaniards? What was their fate?

VII.—1. What was the prevalent belief with regard to the interior of Florida? Who was Ferdinand De Soto, and what was his design?
2. What appointment was bestowed upon him? When did he reach Florida?
3. Where did De Soto spend the first winter?
4. What course did he take in the spring? With what disappointment did De Soto meet?
5. Why was the country of the Cherokees visited, and what was the result? What is said of Mauville, and what occurred there? Give an account of the great battle near Mobile. What was the determination of De Soto, and where did he spend his second winter?
6. When and where did he cross the Mississippi? What course did he then take? Where did he pass the third winter? What is said of the death and burial of De Soto?

7. Where did the Spaniards pass the fourth winter? In what manner did the remnant of the party reach Mexico?
8. During the time that De Soto pursued these investigations in the south, what important events occurred in Canada?

PART II.

CANADA UNDER THE FRENCH.

EARLY SETTLEMENTS AND COLONIAL HISTORY, EXTENDING FROM THE DISCOVERY OF CARTIER, 1535, TO THE CAPTURE OF QUEBEC, 1760, A PERIOD OF 225 YEARS.

CHAPTER I.

DIVISIONS.

I. Expeditions under Cartier, 1534–5.—*II. Expedition under Roberval*, 1540.—*III. English Discoveries under Martin Frobisher*, 1576.—*IV. French Voyages under De la Roche-Pontgravé, and Chauvin*, 1598.—*V. English Discoveries under Bartholomew Gosnold*, 1602.

I. EXPEDITION UNDER CARTIER, 1534.—1. The conduct of the Pope, in granting to Spain the possession of the whole continent of America, roused Francis I. to a determination to claim his equal right to a share of the new world. He facetiously remarked that "he would fain see the article in father Adam's will which bequeathed this vast inheritance to the Spaniard." He soon after

dispatched the expedition we have already mentioned, which sailed on the 20th of April, 1534, but proceeded no further than Gaspé.

2. In the following year Cartier obtained a new commission, and sailed with three vessels. It was on this second voyage that he entered the great river of Canada, which he named the St. Lawrence, because he began to explore it on the festival of that martyr. He proceeded up the river as far as the Isle of Orleans, which he named the Isle of Bacchus, on account of its fertility and the fine vines he found there.

3. Soon after his arrival, he was visited by Donnacona, "the Lord of Canada," who lived at Stadacona, which occupied that portion of Quebec that was some years since desolated by fire. Donnacona came in twelve canoes, but, commanding them to remain at a little distance, he approached the vessels, and commenced an oration. After conversing with the two interpreters, who told him of their visit to France, and the kindness with which they had been treated, he took the arm of Cartier, kissed it, and placed it upon his neck. Cartier went immediately into his canoe and presented to him and his attendants bread and wine, and after some time Donnacona departed in the same state in which he came. Cartier then moored his vessels safely in the river St. Charles, which he named "Port de Ste. Croix" or the Port of the Holy Cross. Here he received another visit from the chief, attended by five hundred warriors, who came to welcome the strangers. The two natives, who had accompanied him to France,

acted on all these occasions as interpreters, and opened a friendly communication with their countrymen. They told them that they were Tiagnoany and Donagaia, words supposed to mean, "those who had been taken away from their own land by the strangers, and had returned again." After this many canoes, laden with men and women, came to visit them, rejoicing and dancing round them, and bringing them presents of eels and other fish, with mullet, and great musk melons.

4. Having heard that there existed, far up the river, a large settlement called Hochelaga, he determined to advance in quest of it. Previous to his setting out, at the request of his two interpreters, he caused his men to shoot off twelve cannons, charged with bullets, into the wood near them. "At whose noise" says Hakluyt, an old historian, "they were greatly astonished and amazed, for they thought that heaven had fallen upon them, and put themselves to flight howling, crying and shrieking." Leaving his vessels, he proceeded in two boats and the pinnace as far as Lake St. Peter, where, on account of the shallowness of the water, he was obliged to leave the pinnace and proceed in the boats. Here they met with five hunters, "who," says Cartier, "freely and familiarly came to our boats without any fear, as if we had even been brought up together." Everywhere he seems to have been received with kindness, for the chief of the district of Hochelai, now the Richelieu, paid him a visit, and presented him with one of his own children, about seven years of age, whom he afterwards visited, while Cartier was wintering at St. Croix.

5. Delighted with his journey, Cartier proceeded, and soon came to Hochelaga, which he found to be a fortified town on a beautiful island under the shade of a mountain. On his landing he was met by more than a thousand of the natives, who received him with every demonstration of joy and hospitality. He was delighted with the view from the mountain, which he named Mont Royal. Time has changed it to Montreal. He seems to have considered the village below as a favourable site for a French settlement, but he did not live to see his idea realized.

6. The way to the village of Hochelaga at that time passed through large fields of Indian corn. Its outline was circular, and it was encompassed by three separate rows of palisades, well secured, and put together; only a single entrance was left in this rude fortification, but this was guarded by pikes and stakes. The cabins, or lodges of the inhabitants, about fifty in number, were constructed in the form of a tunnel, each fifty feet in length, by fifteen in breadth. They were formed of wood, covered with bark. Above the doors of these houses ran a gallery—each house contained several chambers, and the whole was so arranged as to enclose an open court-yard, where the fire was made.

7. The inhabitants were of the Huron tribe, and seem to have regarded Cartier as a being of a superior order, as they brought to him all their sick, decrepit and aged persons, with an evident expectation that he would heal them. Touched by this display of confiding simplicity, he did all he could to soothe their minds. The French his-

torians relate that he made the sign of the Cross upon the sick, distributed *Agni Dei* amongst them, recited with a loud voice the sufferings and death of the Saviour, and prayed fervently with these poor idolaters. How they could understand these well meant and pious proceedings, we are quite at a loss to know, bnt we can easily believe that "the grand flourish of trumpets," which terminated the ceremony, "delighted the natives beyond measure." On his return to his boats he was accompanied by a great number of the inhabitants to the landing-place below St. Mary's current. They even carried on their shoulders some of his men, who were fatigued. They appeared to be grieved at the shortness of their stay, and followed their course along the banks of the river with signs of kindly farewell.

8. The scenery on both sides of the St. Lawrence seems to have delighted Cartier and his companions, who were several of them gentlemen volunteers, more fit to sketch a beautiful scene than to endure the hardships of settling a new country. It is said that an Indian woman named Unacona, wife of one of the natives who had been taken to France, excited her tribe to follow the boats along the shore on their return, and on the landing of the party for the night they were cruelly attacked, and Cartier was nearly murdered. He was saved by the intrepidity of his boatswain, an Englishman, who, finding that the Indians were becoming intoxicated with the wine, procured from the boats, became alarmed for Cartier's safety. He stole quietly round behind where Cartier lay, and, carrying him

off to one of the boats, launched out into the St. Lawrence. The gallant fellow pulled stoutly through the stream, and just at the dawn of morning had the satisfaction to find himself close upon the place where the ships lay. When the Indians made their attack, the party attending Cartier escaped by running to one of the boats, and, on getting on board, he was much surprised to find that they had not returned. He immediately gave orders for a party to go in search of them, which fell in with them about four miles up the river. It appeared that, fearful of being capsized by floating trees and rapids, they had dropped the kedge at a secure distance from the shore, and remained quietly till the day broke.

9. On his return to St. Croix, Cartier was again visited by Donnacona, and returned his visit. He found the people docile and tractable, and their houses well stored with every thing necessary for the approaching season. Cartier and his company, unaccustomed to a Canadian winter, and scantily supplied with proper clothing, suffered so much that twenty-five of their number died from scurvy. Being advised to use a decoction of the spruce fir, which yields the well known Canada balsam, and is a powerful remedy for that disease, the rest of the party soon recovered their health, and in the ensuing spring returned to France. They obliged the Lord of Canada, with two of his chiefs and eight of the natives, to accompany them, an act of treachery which justly destroyed the confidence which the Indians had hitherto reposed in their guests.

10. Before proceeding further, it will be proper to notice

some particulars relative to the aboriginal inhabitants of this continent. The name of Indian, which has ever been applied to them, seems to have been derived from the circumstance of the countries, discovered by Columbus, being called the West Indies.

11. The announcement to the civilized world of the existence of nations roaming through an unbroken and continuous forest, having scarcely any animals tamed for service or for food, and supporting themselves solely by the chase, was received with astonishment. They were at first supposed to be meagre, shivering wretches, whose constant exertions must be employed in attempting to evade the famine with which they were perpetually threatened. How surprised then were the Europeans to find among them warriors, statesmen and orators—a proud and dignified race, terrible in war, mild in peace, maintaining order without the restraint of law, and united by the closest ties.

12. Such was the character presented by those nations on the rivers and lakes of Canada; and the French and English, who have for three centuries been engaged with them either in deadly war or close alliance, have learned to appreciate all that is bright, as well as all that is dark in the native Indian.

13. It has been thought by some that the Indians are the ten lost tribes of Israel; but there seems scarcely a shadow of likelihood in this surmise. The Indian differs very much from the Israelite, and evidently forms a variety of the human race, differing, but not widely, from the

Mongolian. As the New World was doubtless peopled from the Old, and as the Mongul race was situated nearest to the point where Asia and America come almost into contact, the variations which exist between these races may be ascribed merely to a change of outward circumstances. The forehead of the Indian is broad and flat, with cheek-bones more round and arched, however, than the Mongolian, without having the visage expanded to the same breadth. The eyes are deep, small and black, the nose rather small but prominent, with wide nostrils, and the mouth large, with thick lips. The stature is generally above the middle size in men, and below it in women. This is, doubtless, owing to the latter being compelled to undergo the most oppressive drudgery; the ill usage of the squaws forming indeed the worst part of the character of the red men of the woods.

II. Expedition under Roberval.—1. The French nation paid no more attention to the New World until 1540, when Cartier was employed under the Sieur de Roberval, who was appointed viceroy by Francis, to establish a permanent settlement in Canada. This young nobleman not being able to accompany him at the appointed time, Cartier took charge of the expedition, and sailed from Rochelle with five vessels.

2. On his return to St. Croix, Cartier was kindly welcomed by the Indians, yet he soon found that they were averse to any further intercourse with the French, and to their settlement in the country. This probably arose from their learning that Donnacona was dead, and the other

natives would not return. They might also fear lest they should in like manner be torn from their native land.

3. We have every reason to believe that Donnacona and his friends were most honourably treated in France. They were baptized, introduced at court, and produced an extraordinary sensation there. Donnacona had frequent interviews with Francis, and seems to have done all in his power to induce him to send out another expedition to Canada. The natives, however, pined away in the new state of society in which they found themselves, and, of all that Cartier brought away, only one little girl survived.

4. The project of colonizing Canada met with very little encouragement from the people of France generally, as they thought lightly of a country which yielded neither gold nor silver—a sad mistake, as may be seen at the present day by a glance at the degraded condition of the gold and silver regions of Peru and Mexico, and contrasting them with the position held by Canada and the United States.

5. Finding himself uncomfortable at Stadacona, Cartier removed farther up the St. Lawrence, laid up three of his ships at Cap Rouge, and sent the other two back to France, with letters to the king. There he erected a fort which he called Charlesbourg. Leaving the Viscount de Beaupré in command of it, he set off to visit the rapids above Hochelaga. On his way up, he left two boys with his friend, the chief of Hochelai, for the purpose of learning the language. Finding it impossible to pass the rapids in his boats, he returned to Cap Rouge, where he passed a very uncomfortable winter.

6. As he had received no tidings of Roberval, who had made him large promises, he resolved to return to France. On his passage, putting into Newfoundland, he met the Viceroy with his new settlers, stores, and provisions. No entreaties, however, could induce him to return to Canada, though he spoke highly of its fertility, and produced some gold ore found in the country, and some diamonds from the promontory of Quebec, which still retains the name of Cape Diamond. It is probable that the reason why Cartier and his companions were unwilling to return was the fond regret of home, so deeply felt by those who are denied the delight of civilized life. In order, therefore, to prevent any disagreement with Roberval, he weighed anchor in the night and proceeded on his homeward route.

7. Cartier made no subsequent voyage; he died soon after his return home, having sacrificed health and fortune in the cause of discovery. This indeed is too often the case in such enterprises; the leaders either fail or perish before the multitude reap the benefit of their exertions. Many persons besides Cartier, both in France and England, were ruined by the speculations consequent on the discovery of the New World, and many valuable lives were lost.

8. Roberval proceeded to the station which Cartier had occupied, where he endeavoured to secure himself and his settlers by erecting fortifications. Having passed the winter here, he left thirty men in the fort, and returned to France. For six years he took no more interest in Canada, being engaged in the service of his patron, the Emperor Charles V.

9. After the death of Charles, Roberval again embarked for Canada with his gallant brother Achille, and a numerous train of enterprising young men. Having never afterwards been heard of, they are supposed to have perished at sea. The loss of these two valiant young noblemen seems to have excited universal sympathy, Roberval himself being highly respected, and Achille having so great a reputation as a soldier that the warlike Francis always regarded him as one of the chief ornaments of his army. "With these two," says Charlevoix, an old historian, "fell every hope of an establishment in America."

III. ENGLISH DISCOVERIES.—1. In 1576 Martin Frobisher was sent out by Queen Elizabeth with three ships on a voyage of discovery, when Elizabeth's Forland and the Strait of Frobisher were discovered. Mistaking mundic mica, or talc, for gold ore, Frobisher took large quantities of it to England. The following year he was despatched to seek for gold, and to explore the coast with a view of discovering a north-west passage to India. He returned to England without any other success than two hundred tons of the supposed gold ore, and an Indian man woman and child.

2. In 1578 Martin again sailed for the American continent with fifteen ships, in search of gold, to the ruin of many adventurers, who received nothing but mica instead of their expected treasure.

IV. FRENCH VOYAGES UNDER DE LA ROCHE, PONTGRAVÉ, AND CHAUVIN.—1. For nearly fifty years the government of France paid no attention to their Canadian

settlements. Peace however being restored to that country under the sway of Henry IV., the Marquis De la Roche, a nobleman of Brittany, undertook to equip an expedition for the purpose of forming another settlement of a more permanent character on the shores of the New World. He brought out a considerable number of settlers, but was obliged to draw them chiefly from the prisons of Paris. Little is known of his voyage but that he landed and left forty men on Sable Island, a small barren spot near the coast of Nova Scotia. He then returned to France, and died.

2. After his death the poor colonists were neglected, and, when, seven years afterwards, a vessel was sent to enquire for them, only twelve were found living. The emaciated exiles were carried back to France, where they were kindly received by the king, who pardoned their crimes, and made them a liberal donation.

3. It was to private enterprise rather than to royal decrees that the French nation was at last indebted for a permanent settlement in Canada. The merchants of Dieppe, St. Malo, Rouen and Rochelle had opened communications, and had even established posts for the prosecution of the fur trade, which was chiefly carried on at Tadousac. In 1599 Chauvin, of Rouen, and Pontgravé, of St. Malo, two eminent mariners, undertook to settle five hundred persons in Canada. In return for this service, the king granted them a monopoly of the fur trade on the St. Lawrence.

4. Chauvin made two successful voyages to Tadousac,

where the Indians gave the most valuable furs in exchange for the merest trifles. The settlers, however, suffered such hardships from want of provisions that many of them perished before the arrival of the vessels from France. In the course of his third voyage Chauvin was taken ill and died; the settlements, however, were permanently established on the shores of the St. Lawrence.

V. ENGLISH DISCOVERIES UNDER BARTHOLOMEW GOSNOLD.—1. The next adventurer, who visited the New World, was Bartholomew Gosnold, who sailed from Falmouth in England. Abandoning the circuitous route by the Canaries, and the West Indies, which had hitherto been used, he made a direct voyage across the Atlantic, and in seven weeks reached the continent, probably near the northern extremity of Massachusett's Bay. Not finding a good harbour, and sailing southward, he discovered and landed upon a promotory, which he named Cape Cod, from the quantity of that fish found around it. Sailing thence, and pursuing his course along the coast, he discovered several islands, one of which he named Elizabeth's Island, and another Martha's Vine-yard.

2. Here he erected a stone-house, intending to leave part of the crew for the purpose of forming a settlement; but, the Indians beginning to show hostile intentions, the whole party embarked for England, and reached that country in five weeks, having performed the entire voyage in four months.

Questions on Part II—Chapter 1.

What are the divisions of Chapter First ?

I.—1. What roused the attention of Francis to the New World ? Repeat his remark. What did he then do ?

2. When did Cartier obtain a new commission ? Whence did the great river of Canada derive its name ? What name did he give to the Isle of Orleans ?

3. Who visited Cartier here ? Relate the particulars of his visit. What was the conduct of Cartier ? What name did Cartier give to the port ? Give an account of Donnacona's second visit. What is said of the interpreters ? What is it supposed their names meant ? What is said of the Indians ?

4. Whither did Cartier determine to go ? What did he do previous to setting out ? What effect did this produce ? What happened at Lake St. Peter ? With whom did they meet ? Who paid Cartier a visit ?

5. What place did he reach, and by whom was he met ? Did he admire the mountain ? What did he think of the village ?

6. Give an account of Hochelaga. Give an account of its defences. Give an account of its lodges. Where was the gallery, and how was the whole arranged ?

7. To what tribe did the inhabitants belong, and how did they regard Cartier ? What do the French historians relate ? What is said of these proceedings and of the concluding ceremony ? By whom was he accompanied on his return, and what was their conduct ?

8. What is said of the scenery of the St. Lawrence, and of the companions of Cartier ? What story is related of an Indian woman ? By whom was he saved ? How did he proceed ? What was his success ? What of his companions ? What orders did Cartier give ? What had detained them ?

9. Was he again visited by Donnacona ? What misfortune befel the French ? How were they cured ? Of what inexcusable action were they guilty ?

10. What will it be proper to notice here ? Whence is the term Indian derived ?

11. How was the announcement of this people received in the civilized world ? In what state were they first supposed to be ? What was their real state ?

12. What have the French and English now learned ?

13. What are the Indians supposed by some to be ? Why ? What is said of the Mongol race ? Mention the points of resemblance between the Indian and Mongol races. What is said of their stature ? To what is this owing ?

II.—1. When did the French resume their explorations? Who took charge of the expedition?

2. What was the conduct of the Indians on his return to St. Croix? Whence did this probably arise?

3. How had Donnacona and his friends been treated in France? What is said of Donnacona? What is said of the natives?

4. How was the project of colonizing Canada regarded in France? What is said of this?

5. Where did Cartier lay up his vessels, and what fort did he erect? Whom did he leave in command? For what purpose did he leave two boys at the Richelieu? Did he ascend the rapids?

6. Why did he resolve to return to France? Whom did he meet? Did he return to Canada? How did he speak of it? Why did he not return with Roberval? What conduct did he adopt?

7. What is said of Cartier? What is said of the leaders in such enterprizes generally? What is said of many persons besides Cartier?

8. What were the proceedings of Roberval? How was he afterwards engaged?

9. When did Roberval again embark for Canada, and who accompanied him? What was their fate? What is said of the loss of these two noblemen? How were they regarded? What was supposed to be the consequence of their loss?

III.—1. What new expedition was sent out from England? And what discovery did they make? What mistake did he make? What were the objects of his second voyage? What was his success?

2. Give an account of his third voyage.

IV.—1. How long had France neglected Canada? Who undertook the next expedition? What fatal error did he commit? Where did he land?

2. What became of the colonists? How did the king treat them?

3. For what was France at last indebted for a permanent settlement in Canada? What is said of the French merchants? What two eminent mariners came to Canada in 1599? What grant did they obtain?

4. What is said of the Indians? What is said of settlers? What is said of Chauvin? What is said of the settlements?

V.—1. Who succeeded Chauvin? What route did he take? What part of the continent did he reach? What is said of Cape Cod? What islands did he discover?

2. What was his intention? Why did he abandon it? In what time was his voyage performed?

CHAPTER II.

I. Voyages of De Chaste and Champlain, 1603.—*II. De Monts*, 1605.—*Return of Champlain to Canada in* 1608.

I. VOYAGES OF DE CHASTE AND CHAMPLAIN.—1. De Chaste, who may be considered merely as the associate of Champlain, was the next person we find engaged in these enterprises. He organized a company at Rouen to carry on the fur trade, and made an important acquisition in engaging in his operations Samuel Champlain, a distinguished naval officer, who was the destined founder of the principal French settlements in Canada.

2. Pontgravé, who was himself an eminent mariner, received orders to accompany Champlain up the St. Lawrence for the purpose of examining the country in its upper borders. They set out on this survey in a light boat with a crew of only five persons, and ascended the river as far as the Sault St. Louis, but found it impossible to pass the rapids, and were obliged to give up the attempt. With some difficulty they visited Mount Royal, where they made the best observations they could. It is remarkable that the Indian settlement at Hochelaga had by this time dwindled down so much that Champlain does not even notice it. Probably this was owing to the emigration of the Huron tribe.

3. Soon after Champlain returned to France, where he found De Chaste dead, and the whole undertaking derang-

ed. He proceeded however to Paris, and laid before the king a chart and description of the region he had surveyed, with which his majesty appeared to be highly pleased.

II. The Sieur De Monts, 1604.—1. The enterprize was soon taken up by the Sieur de Monts, a gentleman of opulence and distinction, who was a special favourite of Henry IV. of France. He was a Calvinist, and was allowed the free exercise of his religion for himself and friends, but on condition that he should establish the Catholic religion amongst the natives. He obtained higher privileges than had been granted to any of his predecessors, and amongst them the entire monopoly of the fur trade.

2. Having prepared an expedition on a more extensive scale than any former one, he put to sea. Feeling averse, however, to enter the St. Lawrence, he landed in Nova Scotia, and spent some months in trafficking with the natives and examining the coast. Selecting an island near the mouth of the river St. John on the coast of New Brunswick, he there erected a fort, and passed a rigorous winter, his men suffering much from the want of suitable provisions. In the following spring he removed to a place on the Bay of Fundy, and formed a settlement, which was named Port Royal. The whole country, embracing New Brunswick and Nova Scotia, received the name of Acadia.

3. De Monts returned to France in 1605, and, in consequence of the complaints made against him by the persons concerned in the fisheries, was deprived of the commission which had been given him for ten years. In 1607 it was renewed for one year, when it appears that the rep-

resentation of Champlain induced him to turn his attention from the iron-bound coast of Nova Scotia to the fertile banks of the St. Lawrence, and two vessels were dispatched for the express purpose of making a settlement.

III. Return of Champlain to Canada, 1608.—1. The command of the vessels mentioned was given to Champlain, who sailed in the month of April, and arrived at Tadousac in June. Pontgravé, who had accompanied him, remained at Tadousac, which had been hitherto the chief seat for the traffic in furs, but Champlain proceeded up the River as far as to the Isle of Orleans. He examined the shores carefully, and soon fixed on a promontory, richly clothed with vines, and called by the natives Quebio or Quebec, near the place where Cartier passed the winter and erected a fort in 1541. Here on the 3rd of July, 1608, he laid the foundation of the present city of Quebec. His judgement has never been called in question, or his taste disputed in this selection. He first erected buildings on the high grounds, and afterwards a space was elevated or embanked above the inundations of the tide, on which store-houses and a battery were built, on the site of the present Mountain Street. The only settlement, at this period established in the New World besides, was one by the English at Jamestown in Virginia, which was founded in 1607.

2. As soon as the weather permitted, Champlain resumed his voyage up the River for the purpose of exploring the country of which he had taken possession. On his way he met with a band of Indians belonging to the Algonquin nation, who solicited and obtained his aid

against the powerful Iroquois or Five Nations, with whom they were at war. He accompanied the Indians up the river now called the Richelieu, which rises in the country then belonging to the Iroquois, and was greatly delighted by its picturesque scenery.

3. They had reached its southern extremity, and entered the extensive and beautiful lake, now called after this celebrated man, and then passed into another connected with it, now called Lake George, before the hostile tribes came in sight of each other. The allies of the French gained the victory, and Champlain returned to Quebec. Here he received the unpleasant news that De Monts' commission had been finally revoked. This took place chiefly through the influence of the merchants who made loud and just complaints of the injury sustained in the fur trade by its being confined to a single individual. This induced Champlain to return home again. He was well received by Henry, who invited him to an interview at Fontainebleau, and received from him an exact account of all that had been done for New France.

4. We find him with a considerable reinforcement and fresh supplies landing at Quebec in 1610, having made an arrangement with the merchants of the different French ports to use the buildings he had erected at Quebec as a depot for their goods and furs. Here he received another application from the Indians for assistance, which he promised. Happily, however, nothing of importance took place. In a few months after he set sail again to France, taking with him at the request of his allies a native youth.

5. In 1611 Champlain again returned to Canada accompanied by his young savage. Not finding the Indians at Quebec, he employed himself in choosing a spot, higher up the River, for a new settlement. He fixed upon the ground in the vicinity of the eminence which had been named Mount Royal by Cartier, and his choice has been amply justified by the importance to which this place has since arisen.

6. He soon after returned to France, where he was so fortunate as to gain the assistance of the Count de Soissons, who obtained the title of Lieutenant General of New France. He delegated to Champlain all the duties of that high office, and soon after died. A still more influential friend was, however, found in the Prince of Condé, who succeeded to all the privileges of the deceased, and made them over to Champlain in a manner equally ample.

7. His commission, including a monopoly of the fur trade, excited loud complaints, but he removed the chief objections to it by allowing as many of the merchants as would accompany him to embark in the traffic. There came accordingly three from Normandy, one from Rochelle, and one from St. Malo. These were allowed free trade, burdened only with the condition of contributing six men each, to assist Champlain in his projects of discovery, and a twentieth part of their profits towards the expenses of the settlement. This expedition arrived at Quebec in May, 1613.

8. It must be borne in mind that one of the great objects of adventure in that age was the finding of a north-

west passage to China or India, and it was probably for the purpose of prosecuting this discovery that the six men were demanded. So fully convinced was Champlain, at the time he made his settlement at Hochelaga, that China was to be reached in this manner, that he named the River above the rapids, Lachine, meaning to point out that it was the way to China, a name it retains to this day.

9. On his return to France in 1614 Champlain found affairs still favourable to the new colony. The Prince of Condé being powerful at court, no difficulty was found in organizing an expedition from Rouen and St. Malo. This was accompanied by four fathers of the Recollet order, whose benevolence led them to attempt the conversion of the Indians. These were the first priests that settled in Canada.

10. Champlain, with his new company, arrived at Tadousac in May, 1615, whence he immediately went up to Quebec, and thence to the usual place of rendezvous, near the Sault St. Louis. Here he found his old allies, the Algonquins, full of projects of war against the Iroquois, who lived in that part of the country now called the State of New York. He accompanied them a very long and interesting voyage up the Ottawa, the river of the Algonquins, and then, by carrying the canoes overland, proceeded with them to Lake Nepissing, Lake Huron, and the Georgian Bay. A Frenchman, who had spent a winter amongst the Indians, spread a report that the river of the Algonquins issued from a lake, which was connected with the North Sea. He said that he had visited its shores,

and witnessed the wreck of an English vessel, and that the crew, eighty in number, had all been killed except one boy. As every thing connected with the idea of a sea beyond Canada inspired the greatest hope of finding the North West passage, and Champlain anxiously desired to accomplish this enterprise, he was induced by this account to ascend the Ottawa. After much trouble and research he found the whole to be a fabrication. It is supposed that the man made this statement in the hope of deriving eclât from his discovery, and of raising himself into a conspicuous situation.

11. The account of this journey to the great and unknown lakes of the West is extremely interesting. On the arrival of the party at Lake Nepissing, they were kindly received by the tribe of that name, seven or eight thousand in number. After remaining there two days, they set out, and made their way by land and water to the great Lake Attigouantan, evidently the northern part of Lake Huron, which is almost separated into a distinct body of water by the chain of islands now called the Manitoulin. After coasting along for a considerable distance, they turned the point which forms its extremity, and struck into the interior. This country they found to be much superior to that they had passed, being well cultivated, and abounding in Indian corn and fruit. At the appointed rendezvous of their friends, which was probably somewhere about Green Bay, they found a joyful welcome, and several days were spent in dancing and festivity.

12. On their return, after quitting Lake Huron, they

came to a smaller expanse of water, finely diversified by islands, which appears to have been the Georgian Lake or Bay, and on its banks they discerned a fort belonging to the Iroquois, which was the object the Indians had come to attack. After a very unfortunate skirmish they resolved to abandon the enterprize altogether and return home. This, however, could not easily be accomplished, and Champlain had to remain in the country the whole winter, having no other employment or amusement than that of accompanying the Indians in their hunting and fishing excursions. Indeed it was not until the month of June that he found himself again at Sault St. Louis. Having remained here but a short time, he repaired to Tadousac, whence he sailed for Honfleur in September, 1616.

13. While we cannot sufficiently admire the activity and energy displayed by Champlain in his researches in Canada, we must own that he committed a fatal error in joining the Hurons and Algonquins in their wars against the Iroquois, and in teaching them the use of fire-arms. This art was afterwards turned to the most terrible account, for more than a century, against the European settlements.

14. On the first settlement of the French in Canada three great nations divided the territory,—the Algonquins, the Hurons, and the Iroquois, or Five Nations. The dominion of the Algonquins extended along the banks of the St. Lawrence about a hundred leagues, and they were once considered as masters of this part of America. They are said to have had a milder aspect and more

polished manners than any other tribe. They subsisted entirely by hunting, and looked with disdain on their neighbours who condescended to cultivate the ground. A small remnant of this race is still to be found at the Lake of the Two Mountains, and in the neighbourhood of Three Rivers.

15. The Hurons, or Wyandots, were a numerous people, whose very extensive territory reached from the Algonquin frontier to the borders of the great lake bearing their name. They were more industrious, and derived an abundant subsistence from the fine country they possessed, but they were more effeminate, and had less of the proud independence of savage life. When first known, they were engaged in a deadly war with their kindred, the Five Nations, by whom they were finally driven from their country. A remnant of this tribe is still to be found in La Jeune Lorette near Quebec.

16. The Iroquois, or Five Nations, destined to act the most conspicuous part among all the native tribes, occupied a long range of territory on the southern border of the St. Lawrence, extending from Lake Champlain to the western extremity of Lake Ontario. They were thus beyond the limits of what is now termed Canada, but were so connected with the interests of this country that we must consider them as belonging to it. The Five Nations, found on the southern shore of Lake Ontario, embraced the Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, Senecas and Cayugas. They were the most powerful of all the tribes east of the Mississippi, and were further advanced in the few arts of

Indian life than their Algonquin neighbours. They uniformly adhered to the British during the whole of the contest that took place consequently between the French and English. In 1714 they were joined by the Tuscororas, since which time the confederacy has been called the Six Nations. Remnants of the once powerful Iroquois are still found in Canada East, at Sault St. Louis or Caughnawaga, the usual rendezvous of Champlain, at St. Regis, and at the Lake of the Two Mountains, whilst a considerable body of the same people, under the title of "The Six Nations Indians," are settled at Tyendenaga, on the Bay of Quinté and on the Grand River in Canada West.

17. After the return of Champlain to France in 1616 the interests of the colony were in great danger from the Prince of Condé, Viceroy of Canada, being not only in disgrace but in confinement for the share taken by him in the disturbances during the minority of Louis XIII. After a great deal of quarreling amongst the merchants the Duc de Montmorency made an arrangement with Condé for the purchase of his office of Viceroy, which he obtained upon the payment of 11,000 crowns. Champlain considered this arrangement as every way favourable, as the Duc was better qualified for such functions, and from his situation of High Admiral possessed the best means of forwarding the objects of the colonists.

18. Disputes between Rochelle and the other commercial cities, and between the Catholics and Protestants, prevented the departure of any expedition for several years.

During this time attempts were made to degrade Champlain from the high situation in which he had been placed, but by virtue of commissions both from Montmorency and the King he succeeded in crushing this opposition; and in May, 1620, set sail with his family and a new expedition, and after a very tedious voyage arrived at Tadousac. The first child, born of French parents at Quebec, was the son of Abraham Martin and Margaret L'Anglois; it was christened "Eustache" on the 24th of May, 1621.

19. The office of Viceroy had been hitherto little more than a name; but at this period it came into the hands of a man of energy and activity. The Duc de Ventadour, having entered into holy orders, took charge as Viceroy of the affairs of New France solely with a view of converting the natives. For this purpose he sent three Jesuits and two lay brothers, who were fortunately men of exemplary character, to join the four Recollets at Quebec. These nine, we have reason to believe, were the only priests then in Canada.

20. The mercantile company, which had now been entrusted with the affairs of the colony for some time, was by no means active, and was in consequence deprived of its charter, which was given to the Sieurs De Caen, uncle and nephew. On the arrival of the younger De Caen at Tadousac, Champlain set out to meet him, and was received with the greatest courtesy. The appointment of a superintendent could not have been very agreeble to Champlain, who was certainly the person best fitted for the management of the local affairs of the colony. His ami-

able disposition and love of peace, however, induced him to use conciliatory measures. The new superintendent, on the contrary, acted in the most violent manner, claimed the right of seizing on the vessels belonging to the associated merchants, and actually took that of De Pont, their favourite agent. Champlain remonstrated with him, but without effect, as he possessed no power that could effectually check the violence of this new dictator. Fortunately he thought proper to return to France, and left with the settlers a good supply of provisions, arms and ammunition. His conduct, however, induced the greater part of the European traders to leave the colony; so that eventually, instead of its being increased by him, it was considerably lessened, a spirit of discontent diffused, and the settlers were reduced to forty-eight.

21. Having got rid of the troublesome superintendent, Champlain set himself earnestly to terminate the long and desolating war which now raged between the Hurons and the Iroquois. He accompanied some of the chiefs to the head-quarters of the Iroquois, where they met with a very kind reception. The treaty between the nations was about to be concluded when it was nearly broken off by the relentless conduct of a savage Huron, who had accompanied the party in the hope of making mischief and preventing peace. This barbarian, meeting one of the detested Iroquois in a lonely place, murdered him. Such a deed in a member of any civilized mission would have terminated all negociations: but, the deputies having satisfied the Iroquois that it was an individual act, lamented by the

Huron nation, it was overlooked, and the treaty was concluded.

22. The colony was at this time in a very unsatisfactory state, the settlement at Quebec consisting only of fifty-five persons. Indeed the whole of the available possessions in New France included only the fort at Quebec, surrounded by some inconsiderable houses, a few huts on the Island of Montreal, as many at Tadousac and at other places on the St. Lawrence, and a settlement just commenced at Three Rivers.

23. The Indian affairs were also in disorder. The Iroquois had killed a party of five on their way to attack a nation called the Wolves, and a hostile spirit was kindled amongst these fierce tribes. Champlain did all in his power to check this spirit, but he found it impossible to prevent a body of hot-headed young Indians from making an inroad into the Iroquois territory.

24. This band, having reached Lake Champlain, surprised a canoe with three persons in it, two of whom they brought home in triumph. The preparations for torturing them were already going on when intelligence was conveyed to Champlain, who immediately repaired to the spot. The sight of the captives quickened his ardour in the cause of humanity, and he entreated that they might be sent home unhurt with presents to compensate for this wanton attack.

25. This advice was so far adopted that one of them was sent back, accompanied by a chief, and one Mangan, a Frenchman. This expedition had, however, a most

tragical end. An Algonquin, who wished for war, contrived to persuade the Iroquois that the mission was devised with the most treacherous intentions. The Iroquois, misled by this wicked man, determined to take cool and deliberate revenge. When the poor prisoner, the chief, and the Frenchman arrived, they found the fire kindled, and the cauldron boiling, and, being courteously received, were invited to sit down. The Iroquois then asked the Algonquin chief if he did not feel hungry? On his replying that he did, they rushed upon him, and cut slices from different parts of his body, which soon after they presented to him half cooked, and thus continued to torture him till he died in lingering agonies. Their countryman, who had returned to them so gladly, attempted to escape, and was shot dead on the spot; and the Frenchman was tormented to death in the usual manner.

26. When the news of this dreadful tragedy reached the allies of the French, the war-cry was immediately sounded, and Champlain, though deeply afflicted, saw no longer any possibility of averting hostilities. He felt that, as one of his countrymen had been deprived of life, the power of the French would be held in contempt if no resentment were shown. Indeed he experienced no little trouble amongst the friendly tribes who surrounded him, and in several cases Europeans were murdered in an atrocious and mysterious manner.

27. In the meantime the De Caens, though not resident in the colony, took an active interest in the fur trade. Being Huguenots, however, and not likely to forward the

Duc's measures, Cardidal Richelieu, prime minister to Louis XIII., revoked the privileges which had been granted to them and encouraged the formation of a Company, to be composed of a great number of men of property and credit. A charter was granted to this company in 1537 under the title of "The Company of One Hundred Associates."

28. This company engaged, first, to supply those that they settled with lodging, food, clothing and implements for three years, after which time they would allow them sufficient land to support themselves, cleared to a certain extent, with the grain necessary for sowing it; secondly, that the emigrants should be native Frenchmen and Roman Catholics, and that no stranger or heretic should be introduced into the country; and, thirdly, they engaged to settle three priests in each settlement, whom they were bound to provide with every article necessary for their personal comfort as well as the expenses of their ministerial labours for fifteen years. After which cleared lands were to be granted by the company to the clergy for maintaining the Roman Catholic Church in New France.

29. In return for these services the king made over to the Company the fort and settlement at Quebec, and all the territory of New France, including Florida, with power to appoint judges, build fortresses, cast cannon, confer titles, and take what steps they might think proper for the protection of the colony and the fostering of commerce. He granted to them at the same time a complete monopoly of the fur trade, reserving to himself and heirs only

supremacy in matters of faith, fealty and homage as sovereign of New France, and the presentation of a crown of gold at every new accession to the throne. He also secured for the benefit of all his subjects the cod and whale fisheries in the gulf and coast of the St. Lawrence.

30. The Company were allowed to import and export all kind of merchandize, duty free. Gentlemen, both clergymen and laity, were invited to a share in the concern, which they readily accepted till the number of partners was completed. This was a favourite scheme of Richelieu's; and the French writers of the day speak of it with great applause, as calculated, had it been strictly adhered to and wisely regulated, to render New France the most powerful colony in America.

31. This plan of improvement met with a temporary interruption by the breaking-out of a war between England and France in 1628. Charles I. of England immediately gave to Sir David Kerkt, a French refugee, a commission authorizing him to conquer Canada. In consequence of this, after some offensive operations at Tadousac, he appeared with his squadron before Quebec, and summoned it to surrender; but he was answered in so spirited a manner that he judged it prudent to retire.

32. In 1629, however, when Champlain was reduced to the utmost extremity by the want of every article of food, clothing, implements and ammunition, and exposed to the attacks of the Iroquois, Sir David Kerkt, and his brothers Louis and Thomas, appeared again with a squadron before Quebec. The deplorable situation of the

colony, and the very honourable terms proposed to him by Kerkt, induced Champlain to surrender Quebec with all Canada to the Crown of England. The English standard was thus for the first time raised on the walls of Quebec, just one hundred and thirty-five years before the battle of the Plains of Abraham.

33. No blame can be attached to Champlain for this act, as famine pressed so closely on the colonists that they were reduced to an allowance of five ounces of bread per day for each person. Kerkt's generosity to the settlers, who were his own countrymen, induced most of them to remain. Those who wished to go were allowed to depart with their arms, clothes and baggage, and, though the request to convey them home to France could not be complied with, they were provided with a commodious passage by the way of England.

34. Champlain with two little native girls, whom he had carefully educated, arrived at Dover, in England, on the 27th October. He proceeded thence to London for the purpose of conferring with the French ambassador. He soon afterwards returned to France, where, his counsels prevailing at the court of Louis XIII., he was, upon the return of peace, again invested with the government of Canada.

Questions on Part II.—Chapter 2.

What are the divisions of this Chapter ?

I.—1. Who next engaged in these enterprizes ? What did he organize, and whom did he engage ?

2. Upon what excursion did Pontgravé accompany Champlain ? Did they accomplish their object ? What place did they visit ? What is said of the settlements at Hochelaga ?

3. What is said of his return to France ? What did he present to the king ?

II.—1. By whom was Champlain succeeded ? What is said of De Monts ? What did he obtain ?

2. What is said of his expeditions ? Where did he erect a fort ? To what place did De Monts remove ? What name was given to the whole country ?

3. Why was he deprived of his commission ? When was it renewed and what is said of Champlain ?

III.—1. Who commanded this expedition ? What is said of Pontgravé ? What is said of Champlain ? Upon what place did he fix ? When did Champlain found Quebec ? What is said of his choice ? Give an account of his proceedings. What is said of the first English settlements ?

2. For what purpose did Champlain go up the River ? With whom did he meet, and what did they solicit ? Whither did he accompany the Indians ?

3. Where did the hostile tribes meet ? Who gained the victory ? What news did he receive ? How did this take place ? What did this induce him to do ? How was he received by the king ?

4. When did he again land in Quebec, and what arrangement had he made ? Whom did he take with him to France ?

5. When did he return ? How did he employ himself ? Upon what did he fix, and what is said of his choice ?

6. Whose assistance did he gain after his return to France ? What is said of De Soissons ? What is said of the Prince of Condé ?

7. What is said of his commission ? Who accompanied him to Canada ? What did they contribute towards the projects of Champlain, and the expenses of the settlements ?

8. What was one of the great objects of enterprise ? Give an instance of this.

9. In what state were affairs in France ? Who accompanied this expedition ? What is said of these priests ?

10. To what place did Champlain proceed ? What is said of the Algonquins ? Whither did he accompany them ? What

report was spread by a Frenchman? Repeat his story. Why did this story induce Champlain to ascend the Ottawa? What was the result? Why did the man fabricate this story?

11. What is said of this journey? By whom were they kindly received? What great lake did they reach? Whither did they then go? What kind of country did they find? What reception did they meet?
12. What is said of the Georgian Bay, and of the fort? What was the result? How long had Champlain to remain with the Indians? When did he reach St. Louis? When did he sail for France?
13. What must we blame in the conduct of Champlain? What was the result?
14. What three great Indian nations were found in Canada? How far did the dominion of the Algonquins extend? Describe them. Where is a remnant of the tribe still to be found?
15. Where was the Huron territory situated? What is said of the Hurons?
16. What is said of the Iroquois? Why must we consider them as belonging to Canada? Name the Five Nations. What is said of them? To whom did they adhere? By whom were they joined, and what are they now called? Where may they still be found?
17. How were the interests of the colony endangered? Who purchased the office of Viceroy from the Prince of Condé? Did Champlain approve of this arrangement, and why?
18. What prevented the departure of any expedition? What is said of attempts made to degrade Champlain? When did he return to Canada? What is said of the first child born of French parents in Quebec?
19. What is said of the office of Viceroy? What is said of the Duc de Ventadour? What is said of the priests?
20. What is said of the company, and to whom was the charter transferred? Did Champlain visit De Caen? What is said of this appointment? What is said of the conduct of De Caen? Did Champlain possess power to check this violence, and what did De Caen resolve to do? What effect had his conduct on the colonists? To what number were they reduced?
21. What was the next effort made by Champlain? Whither did he go? What nearly broke off the treaty of the Indians? What crime did he commit? Did this break off the negociations?
22. In what state was the colony at this time? Give an account of the possessions in New France.

23. In what state were Indian affairs? What had the Iroquois done? What did Champlain find it impossible to prevent?
24. What prisoners did they take? Give an account of Champlain's conduct on this occasion. What did he entreat?
25. Was this advice adopted? What issue had this expedition? What did an Algonquin contrive to do? What determination did the Iroquois take? How was the party received? To what tortures did they subject the Algonquin? What did they do to their countryman, and to the Frenchman?
26. What was the effect produced? How did Champlain feel? What had happened in several cases?
27. What is said of the De Caens? What is said of Cardinal Richelieu? To whom was a charter granted?
28. With what did they engage to supply the settlers? Secondly? Thirdly? What was to be granted to the clergy?
29. What did the king give to the Company? What power did he confer upon them? What monopoly did he grant, and what did he reserve? What did he secure for all his subjects?
30. What was the company allowed to do? Who were invited to share in the concern? With what celebrated man was this a favourite scheme?
31. How was this plan interrupted? What was given to Sir David Kerkt? Give an account of his proceedings.
32. When did Kerkt return? What induced Champlain to surrender? What is said of the English standard?
33. In what state were the colonists? What is said of Kerkt? How were those who wished to return treated? When did Champlain arrive in England? Why did he visit London? What appointment did he receive from Louis XIII.

CHAPTER III.

DIVISIONS.

I. Administration of Champlain, 1632.—*II. Administration of M. de Montmagny*, 1635.—*III. Administration of M. d'Aillebout*, 1647.—*IV. Administration of M. d'Argenson*, 1658.—*V. Administration of M. d'Avangour*, 1661.—*VI. Government of M. de Mesy*, 1663.

I. ADMINISTRATION OF CHAMPLAIN, 1632.—1. The English held possession of Canada nearly three years. So little value, however, did they attach to the colony that they readily restored it to France at the peace of St. Germain en Laye, which was concluded on the 19th of March, 1632. Champlain had the happiness to enter his beloved adopted country once more with a squadron containing all necessary supplies.

2. He resumed the government of the colony which he had so long fostered, and continued to administer all its affairs with singular prudence, resolution and courage. In 1635 he died, after an occasional residence of nearly thirty years in Quebec, full of honours and rich in public esteem and respect. His obsequies were performed with all the pomp the colony could command. His remains were followed to the grave with real sorrow by the clergy, the civil and military authorities, and the inhabitants of every class, each feeling that they had lost a friend.

3. The death of Champlain was the most grievous misfortune with which Canada had yet been visited. During the greater part of his active life the chief object of his heart was to become the founder of the colony, which, he felt confident, would attain to a summit of extraordinary power and importance, and to civilise and convert its native inhabitants. So great was his zeal for religion that it was a common saying with him, "That the salvation of one soul was of more value than the conquest of an empire."

4. It was just about the period of his death that the religious establishments, now so numerous, were commenced in Canada. Though they did little for the immediate improvement of the colony, yet they formed the foundation on which arose those morals and habits which still characterise the French Canadians, and which demand our admiration.

5. The first mover in this work of benevolence was the Marquis de Gamache, whose fervour had led him to join the order of Jesuits. He conceived the design of forming a College at Quebec, and was enabled by his friends to offer 6,000 gold crowns for this purpose. His proposal was readily accepted and carried into effect. An institution for instructing the Indians was also established at Sillery, a few miles from Quebec. The Hotel Dieu, or House of God, was founded two years afterwards by a party of Ursuline nuns, who came out under the auspices of the Duchesse d'Aiguillon. Madame de Peltrie, too, a young widow of rank, engaged several sisters of the Ursulines at Tours in France, whom she brought out at her

own expense to Quebec, where they founded the convent of St. Ursula.

6. Although several of the priests who had been settled in Quebec, previous to its occupation by the English, had returned to France, yet, when it again came into possession of the French, some of them came back for the purpose of resuming their labours. These missionaries soon perceived that the Island of Montreal was an object of great importance. Several persons in France, who were powerful in their connections, and full of religious zeal, formed themselves into a society for the purpose of colonising the island. They proposed that a village should be established, and be well fortified to resist a sudden irruption of the natives, that the poorer class of emigrants should there find an asylum and employment, and that the rest of the island should be occupied by such friendly tribes of Indians as had embraced Christianity, or wish to receive religious instruction, hoping that in time the sons of the forest might become accustomed to civilized life and subsist by cultivating the earth.

7. In the year 1640 the king ceded the whole Island of Montreal to this association, and in the following year M. de Maisonneuve brought out several families from France, and was appointed governor of the island. On the 17th of June, 1642, the spot destined for the city was consecrated by the superior of the Jesuits, the "Queen of Angels" was supplicated to take it under her protection, and it was named after her "la Ville Marie."

8. On the evening of this memorable day Maisonneuve

visited the mountain. Two old Indians who accompanied him, having conducted him to the summit, told him that they belonged to the nation which had formerly occupied the whole of the country he beheld, but that they had been driven away, and obliged to take refuge amongst the other tribes, except a few who, with themselves, remained under their conquerors. The governor kindly urged the old men to invite their brethren to return to their hunting-grounds, assuring them they should want for nothing. They promised to do so, but it does not appear that they were successful. In the year 1644 the whole of this beautiful domain became the property of the St. Sulpicians of Paris, and was by them afterwards conveyed to the Seminary of the same order at Montreal, in whose possession it still remains.

II. ADMINISTRATION OF M. DE MONTMAGNY, 1635. —1. The situation of M. de Montmagny, the governor, who succeeded Champlain in 1635, was rendered peculiarly critical by the state of the Indian nations. Owing to the weakness of the French, the Iroquois had advanced by rapid steps to great importance; they had completely humbled the power of the Algonquins, and closely pressed the Hurons, scarcely allowing their canoes to pass up and down the St. Lawrence. The governor was obliged to carry on a defensive warfare, and erected a fort at the Richelieu, by which river the Iroquois chiefly made their descents.

2. At length these fierce people made proposals for a solid peace, which were received with great cordiality. The governor met their deputies at Three Rivers, where the

Iroquois produced seventeen belts which they had arranged along a cord fastened between two stakes. Their orator then came along and addressed Montmagny by the title of Oninthio, which signifies *Great Mountain;* and, though it was in reference to his name, they continued ever after to apply this term to the French governors, sometimes adding the respectful appellation of Father.

3. The orator declared their wish "to forget their songs of war, and to resume the voice of cheerfulness." He then proceeded to explain the meaning of the belts. They expressed the calming of the spirit of war, the opening of the paths, the mutual visits to be paid, the feasts to be given, the restitution of the captives, and other friendly proceedings. In conformity to Indian etiquette the governor delayed his answer for two days, and then bestowed as many presents as he had received belts, and through an interpreter expressed the most pacific sentiments. Piscaret, a great chief, then said, "Behold a stone which I place on the sepulchre of those that were killed in the war, that no one may attempt to move their bones, and that every desire of avenging their death may be laid aside." Three discharges of cannon were considered as sealing the treaty. This engagement was for sometime faithfully observed, and the Iroquois, the Algonquins, and the Hurons forgot their deadly feuds, and mingled in the chase as if they had been one nation. M. de Montmagny appears to have commanded the general respect of the natives, but, owing to a change in the policy of the court, he was unexpectedly removed.

III. Administration of M. d'Aillebout, 1647.—1. Montmagny was succeeded by M. d'Aillebout, who brought with him a reinforcement of one hundred men. The benevolent Margaret Bourgeois, too, at this time founded the institution of the Daughters of the Congregation at Montreal, which is at present one of the first female seminaries in the colony.

2. While the French settlements were thus in Canada, those of England on the eastern shore of America were making an equally rapid progress. A union among them seemed so desirable to the new governor that he proposed to the New England colonies a close alliance between them and the French; one object of which was an engagement to assist each other, when necessary, in making war with the Five Nations. However desirous the English colonies might have been on other accounts to form such an alliance, the condition with respect to the Indians was not acceptable to them, and the negociation was broken off. Of what effects this union, if it had taken place, would have been productive, it is impossible now to conjecture. There is no doubt but that the failure of the proposition must have had an important bearing upon the events which followed; first, in the continued rivalry of the two nations, and, afterwards, in the wars between them, which did not end until the whole of Canada was subjected to Great Britain.

3. At this period the missionaries began to combine with their religious efforts political objects, and employed all their influence in furthering the French power.

Amongst other movements they induced a number of Iroquois to leave their own country and settle within the boundaries of the colony; but they do not appear to have succeeded in civilizing them. They found the Hurons, however, far more tractable and docile; it is said that nearly three thousand of them were baptised at one time. A considerable change soon appeared in this wild region, and the christianized Indians were united in the villages of Sillery, St. Joseph and St. Mary.

4. During the administration of M. d'Aillebout the Iroquois renewed the war in all its fury, and these peaceable settlers found that their enemies could advance like foxes and attack like lions. While the missionary was celebrating the most solemn rites of his church in the village of Sillery, the war-cry was suddenly raised, and an indiscriminate massacre took place amongst the four hundred families residing there. Soon after a band of the same people, amounting to a thousand, made an attack upon the mission of St. Ignace, and carried off or killed all the inhabitants except three. St. Louis was next attacked, and made a brave resistance, which enabled many of the women and children to escape. The missionaries could have saved themselves, but, attaching a high importance to the administration of the last sacrament to the dying, they sacrificed their lives to the performance of this sacred rite.

4. Deep and universal dismay now spread over the Huron tribe. Their land, lately so peaceable, was become a land of horror and of blood, a sepulchre for the dead.

No hope appearing for the survivors, the whole nation broke up and fled for refuge in every direction. A few united with their conquerors, the Iroquois, but the greater number sought an asylum with the nations of the Cats or Eriez, the Ottawas, and others more remote. Only those residing in the village of St. Mary remained, and they retired to the island of St. Joseph, where they for some time escaped. At last the Iroquois came upon them with such suddenness and fatal precision that it seemed as if a destroying angel had guided their steps; one family after another was surprised and destroyed, till of many hundreds not a single individual escaped.

6. The Iroquois now completely lorded it over Canada, and the French were virtually blockaded in the forts of Quebec, Three Rivers and Montreal. Bands of marauders carried away the settlers from under the very cannon, and swept off the limited harvests raised in the vicinity of these places.

7. After the total destruction of their villages the christianized Indians, worn out by war, solicited the missionaries to place them under the protection of the French in their principal fort at Quebec. After serious consideration this course was adopted, and they were led in a reduced body of three hundred through the wide and noble region, lately peopled by their tribe to the number of ten or twelve thousand. It now, however, presented a scene of unbroken silence and desolation, only interrupted by the traces of havoc and slaughter, which were visible at every spot formerly inhabited.

8. Overwhelmed with distress at viewing these evidences of the total destruction of the Huron name, they reached Quebec. They experienced, however, a sad contrast to the reception they would have found amongst any neighbouring tribe of savages. There they would have had every want supplied, have received the most tender nursing, and been treated as equals. Here they were viewed as objects of charity, and, though considerable exertions were made, the religious houses alone finding room for a hundred of the most destitute, yet the remainder were in danger of perishing from cold and hunger. By being placed in this degraded position the hearts of all these children of the forest received a deep and lasting wound, which time could scarcely heal.

9. After some time a station was procured for them, which was called Sillery from their former settlement. It forms a beautiful dingle near the River St. Charles, and is now in the hands of some of the religious houses at Quebec. The descendants of these Huron refugees are to be found in the village of Indian Lorette, a spot near Quebec, which is visited by every traveler who feels an interest in the Indian race. It presents, however, a striking and melancholy contrast with their former power and condition, when they stepped, the lords of the soil, over the magnificent country which borders Lake Huron.

10. At length the Iroquois began to make overtures of peace, to which, it was found, the missionaries had powerfully contributed. At first these excellent men had been regarded with extreme antipathy, but many of them, after

suffering protracted torture and partial mutilation, had been spared and adopted into the Indian families. Their meek deportment, their solemn ceremonies, and the fervour with which they raised to God "hands without fingers," made a strong impression on the savage breast. Hence deputies appeared asking for peace. In their figurative language they said "that they came to wipe away the blood which reddened the mountains, the lakes and the rivers," and "to bring back the sun, which had hid its face during the late dreadful seasons of warfare." They also solicited "Black Robes," as they called the missionaries, to teach them the Christian doctrine, and to keep them in the practice of peace and virtue.

IV. ADMINISTRATION OF D'ARGENSON, 1658.— 1. The Viscount d'Argenson, who came out as governor-general, considered it necessary to accept these terms; the most amicable professions, however, hardly procured a respite from hostility, for, whilst one party treated, another attacked. In the following summer Abbé Montigny, titular bishop of Petré, landed at Quebec with a brief from the Pope, constituting him apostolic vicar. Curacies were at the same time established in Canada.

V. ADMINISTRATION OF D'AVANGOUR, 1661.— 1. The Viscount d'Argenson, having requested his recal on account of ill health, was relieved by the Baron d'Avangour, an officer of great integrity and resolution. His decisive measures seemed to have saved Canada. He represented the defenceless state of the country and its natural beauty and importance to the king in warm and

forcible language, and excited a deep interest for these distant possessions in the mind of his majesty, who had been hitherto ignorant of their value.

2. It was at length announced that a grand deputation was coming from all the cantons, with the intention of "uniting the whole earth," and of "burying the hatchet so deep that it might never again be dug up," and they brought with them a hundred belts of wampum, each of which signified some condition of the proposed peace. Unfortunately a party of Algonquins formed an ambuscade, and killed the greater part of them. Owing to this deplorable event all prospects of peace were blasted, and war raged with greater fury than ever.

3. The Iroquois, having seen the powerful effect of fire-arms in their wars with the French, had procured them from the Dutch at Manhattan, now New York, and thus acquired an additional superiority over the wild tribes of the West. They attacked the Ottawas, who did not even make an attempt at resistance, but sought refuge in the islands of Lake Huron. They commenced a desperate war with the Eriez, a name in their language signifying *Cats*, and after a hard struggle completely succeeded. It is remarkable that this powerful nation has left no memorial of its existence except the great Lake Erie which bears its name.

4. In 1663 the colony was visited by a most remarkable succession of earthquakes, which commenced on the 6th of February, and continued for half a year with little intermission. They returned two or three times a day, agita-

ting both land and water, and spreading universal alarm, yet without inflicting any permanent injury, or causing the loss of a single life.

5. This remarkable event was preceded by a great rushing noise, heard throughout the whole extent of the country, which caused the people to fly out of their houses as if they had been on fire. Instead of fire they were surprised to see the walls reeling backwards and forwards, and the stones moving as if detached from each other; the bells sounded, the roofs of the buildings bent down, the timbers cracked, and the earth trembled violently. Animals were to be seen flying about in every direction, children were crying and screaming in the streets, and men and women, horror-struck and ignorant whither to fly for refuge, stood still, unable to move; some threw themselves on their knees in the snow, calling on the saints for aid, others passed this dreadful night in prayer.

6. The movement of the ground resembled the waves of the ocean, and the forests appeared as if there was a battle raging between the trees, so that the Indians declared in their figurative language "that all the trees were drunk." The ice, which was upwards of six feet thick, was rent and thrown up in large pieces, and from the openings came thick clouds of smoke, or fountains of dirt and sand. The springs were impregnated with sulphur, many rivers were totally lost, some became yellow, others red, and the St. Lawrence appeared entirely white down as far as Tadousac.

7. The extent of this earthquake was so great that

one hundred and eighty thousand square miles were convulsed on the same day. There is nothing, however, in the whole visitation so worthy of remark as the care and kindness which God showed to the people in preserving them, so that not one was lost or had a hair of his head injured.

8. Louis XIV. resolved at this time to raise Canada to her due importance, and no longer to overlook one of the finest countries in the World, or expose the French power to contempt by allowing it to be trampled on by a handful of savages. For this purpose he sent out four hundred troops, accompanied by M. de Mesy, as commissioner to examine into and regulate the different branches of administration.

VI. GOVERNMENT OF M. DE MESY, 1663.—1. Hitherto the governor had exercised in person, and without control, all the functions of government, but Louis resolved immediately to erect Canada into a royal government with a council and an intendant, to whom should be entrusted the weighty affairs of justice, police, finance and marine. In this determination he was warmly seconded by his chief minister, the great Colbert, who was animated by the example of Great Britain, to improve the navigation and commerce of his country by colonial establishments.

2. The company of the "One Hundred Partners," hitherto exercised the chief power in Canada. They were very attentive to their own interests in rigidly guarding their monopoly of the fur trade, but had been all along utter-

ly regardless of the general welfare of the colony. They were now, however, very unwillingly obliged to relinquish their privileges into the hands of the crown.

3. Under the royal jurisdiction the governor, a king's commissioner, an apostolic vicar, and four other gentlemen were formed into a sovereign council. To these were confided the powers of cognizance in all cases civil or criminal, to judge in the last resort according to the laws and manners of France, and practice of the Parliament of Paris, or "Coutume de Paris," as it was called. The general legislative powers of the crown were reserved, to be applied according to circumstances.

Questions on Part II—Chapter 3.

1.—1. How long had the English possession of Quebec? When did they restore it to France? What is said of Champlain's return?

2. What is said of his resumption of the government? What of his death? What of his funeral? Who followed him to the grave?

3. What is said of this event? What had been his chief object? Repeat a memorable saying of his.

4. What establishments were now commenced in Canada? How are they to be regarded?

5. Who was the first mover in this work? What was his design? Was he successful? What other institution was established? What of the Hotel Dieu? Who founded the convent of St. Ursula?

6. What is said of the priests? What did they soon perceive? What society was formed? What did they propose with regard to a village? What to the emigrants? What to the Indians?

7. To whom was the island ceded, and who was appointed governor? What is said of the consecration of the city?

8. What story is told of Maisonneuve and two Indians? What did the governor urge them to do? Did they do so? Give an account of the transfer of the Island of Montreal to the St. Sulpicians.

II.—1. What rendered the situation of Montmagny critical? What is said of the Iroquois? What had they done? What was the governor obliged to do?

2. What proposals were made? Where did the governor meet the Iroquois? By what title did they address Montmagny?

3. Give an account of this interview. What did the belts express? How did the governor act? Repeat the speech of Piscaret. What ceremony followed? Did the Indians observe the treaty? What is said of the governor?

III—1. Who succeeded Montmagny? What institution was founded at Montreal?

2. What is said of the English settlements? What did the governor propose? Why was the negociation broken off? What is said of this union? What of its failure? In what manner?

3. What is said of the missionaries? Whom did they induce to settle in Canada? How did they find the Hurons disposed? What change took place?

4. Who renewed the war? And what did the settlers find? What took place at Sillery? What at St. Ignace? What at St. Louis? Could the missionaries have escaped?

5. What was now the condition of the Huron tribe? Whither did they fly? And with what nations did they take refuge? What became of the Indians of St. Mary's? How were they exterminated?

6. In what state were the French at this period? What is said of the Indians?

7. What did the christianized Indians solicit? Was this course adopted? Describe the aspect of their country.

8. In what state of mind did they reach Quebec? What is said of their reception? How would they have been received by savages? How were they regarded at Quebec? What was the effect?

9. What was procured for them? Describe Sillery. Where are the last Hurons now to be found? What aspect does it present?

10. What overtures were made by the Iroquois? What is said of the missionaries? How was this change produced? What ensued? Repeat the sayings of the deputies. What did they solicit?

IV.—1. Were these proposals accepted? Who landed at Quebec? And what were established in Canada?

V.—1. Who succeeded d'Argenson? What is said of his measures? What did he excite in the mind of the king?

2. What did they announce? And what were their intentions? What did they bring with them? What unfortunate event occurred? What was the result?

3. Whence did the Iroquois procure fire-arms? Whom did they attack? With whom did they commence war? Mention a remarkable circumstance.

4. With what was the colony visited? How often did they return?

5. By what was this remarkable event preceded? Describe the effect of the earthquake? How did it affect animals and people?

6. Describe the movement of the ground. And of the forests. What is said of the ice? And of the springs and rivers?

7. How far did it extend? What is most worthy of remark in this visitation?

8. What did Louis XIV. resolve to do? Who were sent out? And by whom were they accompanied?

VI.—1. How had the functions of government been hitherto executed, and what was Canada erected into? Who seconded this determination, and by what example was he animated?

2. What is said of the company of "One Hundred Partners?" How had they acted? What were they obliged to do?

3. What persons formed the royal council? Give an account of the powers confided to them. What is said of the legislative powers?

CHAPTER IV.

DIVISIONS.

I. Government of the Marquis de Tracy, 1665.—*II. An Account of the Various Settlements on the American Continent at this period.*

I. GOVERNMENT OF THE MARQUIS DE TRACY, 1665.—1. The Marquis de Tracy, filling the joint character of Viceroy and Lieutenant General, arrived in Canada in

1665. He brought with him the whole regiment of De Carignan Salières, consisting of more than one thousand men, the officers of which soon became the chief seigneurs of the colony. This regiment had been employed for some time in Hungary, and had acquired a high reputation. This, with a considerable number of settlers, including agriculturists and artizans with horses and cattle, formed an accession to the colony which far exceeded its former numbers.

2. The enlightened policy of Colbert, in thus raising Canada into notice and consideration, was followed by the success it deserved. To well regulated civil government was added increased military protection against the Iroquois. Security being thus obtained, the migration of French settlers increased rapidly, and, being promoted in every possible way by the government, New France rose rapidly into consideration and importance. Owing to the presence of so many soldiers, a martial spirit was imparted to the population, and they began to prepare to defend properly the country of their adoption.

3. The new viceroy lost no time in preparing to check the insolence of the Iroquois, and to establish a supremacy over them. He erected three forts on the river Richelieu, the first at Sorel, the second at Chambly, and the third further up the river. Overawed by these movements, and by the report of a large force marching against them, three of the cantons sent deputies with ample professions of friendship, proposing an exchange of all the prisoners taken on both sides since the last treaty, *to which the* viceroy agreed.

4. The fierce Oneidas and Mohawks, however, kept aloof, and a party of the latter killed three officers, one of whom, named De Chasy, was nephew to the viceroy. When they found, however, that the French general, De Courcelles, had begun his march into the territory, an envoy from each of these nations appeared at Quebec to solicit peace. They were well received, and invited to the governor's table. The conversation happening unfortunately to fall on De Chasy's death, the envoy from the Mohawks, in a paroxysm of savage pride, lifted up his arms, saying, "With this hand that young officer was slain." M. de Tracy in a transport of rage told him he should not live to kill another Frenchman, and ordered him to be immediately executed: whilst the Oneida envoy was detained prisoner. Of course this event put an end to all pacific overtures. Indeed the viceroy would not even listen to two new ambassadors who were sent to him. He determined immediately to take the command in person, and, being joined by De Courcelles, and reinforced by six hundred of the Carignan regiment, advanced boldly into the enemy's country.

5. Notwithstanding every precaution had been taken to keep his movements secret, the Indians had received notice of De Tracy's approach. They immediately abandoned their villages, and left him to march through a desolate country. He found, however, such an abundance of grain, buried near their deserted abodes, that he was enabled to subsist his troops until they reached the eastern frontier. The Indians, who were assembled there,

fled with precipitation into still more remote and inaccessible retreats, and, as he could not occupy this extensive territory, he was obliged to return without striking any decisive blow.

6. The Marquis De Tracy continued in authority only a year and a half, and on his return to France carried with him the affection of the people. He maintained a state which had never been seen before in Canada. Besides the regiment of Carignan he was allowed to maintain a body-guard, wearing the same uniform as the *Garde Royale* of France. He always appeared on state occasions with these guards, twenty-four in number, who preceded him, while four pages immediately accompanied him, followed by five valets. It was thought at that time that this style gave favourable impressions of royal authority.

7. Before this officer returned home he placed the country in a state of defence, and established the Company of the West Indies, as this new company was called from having been united to the other French possessions in America, which we have not yet mentioned. This very able governor left M. De Courcelles to act as governor-general with several officers of great ability under his command.

II. ACCOUNT OF THE VARIOUS SETTLEMENTS ON THE CONTINENT AT THIS PERIOD.—1. Before proceeding farther in our history we will take a glance at the different settlements formed on the coast of the Atlantic, in order to show the situation of Canada at that time with *regard to the colonies* near her.

2. The first attempt made by the English in forming a settlement was in 1583, when Sir Humphrey Gilbert obtained a charter from Queen Elizabeth, and sailed with several vessels. A series of disasters, however, defeated the project, and on the homeward voyage the vessel in which he sailed was wrecked, and all on board perished.

3. Florida, as has been mentioned in the first part of this history, had been discovered by Sebastian Cabot, and taken possession of in 1513 by Poncé de Leon, and Carolina in 1520 by D'Allyon. To these succeeded the discoveries of Verrazani in 1524, extending from the coasts of New Jersey to Newfoundland. In 1562 Coligny, Admiral of France, desirous of establishing in America a refuge for French Protestants, dispatched a squadron to Florida under the command of John Ribault, but it sailed farther north than was intended, and arrived at Port Royal entrance in Carolina. Here after some deliberation it was determined to establish a colony, and a fort was erected. They gave the country the name of Carolina in compliment to Charles IX. of France, and on going away left twenty-six men to keep possession. The next year this little company constructed a rude brigantine, and embarked in it for home, but had nearly perished by famine at sea when they fell in with and were taken on board of an English vessel.

4. In 1564 another expedition was planned, and a colony established on the river St. John's in Florida. It was on the point of being broken up, when Ribault arrived and assumed the command; bringing with him supplies and additional emigrants.

5. In the meantime, news having reached Spain that French Protestants were settled within the Spanish territory, General Melendez was despatched to extirpate the heretics. On the 8th of September, 1565, he landed, took possession of Carolina, and proclaimed the King of Spain monarch of all North America.

6. A short time after this the French fleet, having put to sea with the design of attacking the Spaniards in Carolina, was overtaken by a furious storm, every ship was wrecked on the coasts of Florida, and the French Protestant settlement there left in a defenceless state. The Spaniards, aware of this, made their way through the forests to the French fort, and put to death all its inmates except a few who fled into the woods. These subsequently escaped, and got on board two French ships, which had remained in the harbour. Over the mangled remains of the French the Spaniards placed this inscription, "We do not this as unto Frenchmen, but as unto heretics." The helpless fugitives who had escaped were unfortunately shipwrecked soon after embarkation. They were soon discovered by the Spaniards, and were all massacred except a few Catholics and several mechanics, who were reserved as slaves. This outrage, however, did not remain long unavenged; for in the next year, 1566, the Chevalier De Georges, a noble-minded soldier of Gascony, fitted out three ships at his own expense, surprised two of the Spanish forts on the St. John's river in Florida, and hung their garrisons on the trees. Over them in bitter mockery he placed this inscription, "I do

this, not as unto Spaniards or mariners, but as to traitors, robbers and murderers."

7. Sir Humphrey Gilbert made an attempt in 1583 to found an English colony on the shores of the Atlantic, which ended in the loss of every one connected with the expedition. This, however, did not prevent his brother-in-law, Sir Walter Raleigh, from embarking in the same course. Having obtained a patent from Queen Elizabeth, he sailed the next year, and took possession of the lands lying between the 33rd and 40th degrees of north latitude. To this extensive territory he gave the name of Virginia in honour of the Virgin Queen, and by this name all North America was for some time distinguished. The two vessels which accompanied him visited the coast of Carolina, and the islands in Pamlico and Albemarle sounds.

8. During the year 1585 Sir Walter stationed one hundred people at the river Roanoke. Their impatience, however, to acquire riches gave a wrong direction to their industry, and the cultivation of the ground was neglected in the idle search after gold and silver. The greater part of these settlers perished, and the survivors were taken home to England by Sir Francis Drake, who opportunely arrived with a fleet from the West Indies.

9. Soon after Sir Francis Drake had sailed, Sir Richard Grenville arrived with a fresh colony. In 1557 Sir Walter sent another company under Governor White, who on his arrival found that all the last company had perished either by famine or by the savage nations. Notwithstanding this dreadful circumstance he left one hun-

dred and fifty people at the settlement. On the 13th of August of this year Manteo, the first Indian who became a Christian, was baptized, and on the 18th the first child of English parents was born. She was the daughter of a Mrs. Dare, and was named Virginia. The sufferings of this colony must have been dreadful, for, when White returned (which, owing to his having been taken by the Spaniards, was not until 1590) not an individual was to be found. They had either perished for want of food or been put to death by the Indians.

10. The voyage of Bartholomew Gosnold in 1602 has been already mentioned. Martin Pring succeeded him. He landed on the coast of Maine, discovered some of its principal rivers, and examined the coast of Massachusetts as far as Martha's Vineyard. In 1604 M. de Monts formed the settlement at Nova Scotia, then called Acadia.

11. In 1606 Mr. Percy, brother to the Duke of Northumberland, went out to Virginia, and discovered James's river, which he named after the English king. In the following year a company, called the London Company, sent out three vessels under the command of Captain Newport. This was the first permanent settlement made by the English in the New World, and took place one hundred and ten years after the discovery of the Continent by Cabot, and forty-one years after the settlement of St. Augustine in Florida.

12. The year 1608 is memorable for the founding of the city of Quebec, the first permanent settlement made by the French in the New World, England having preceded them only one year in successful colonization.

13. During the years 1607 and 1608 Henry Hudson, an English mariner of some celebrity, made two voyages to the northern coasts of America with the hope of finding a passage through the icy seas to the genial climes of Southern Asia. In 1609 he entered into the service of the Dutch East Indian Company, and sailed on his third voyage. Failing to discover a northern passage to India, he turned to the south, and explored the eastern coast in the hope of finding a passage to the Pacific. After proceeding south as far as Capes Charles and Henry, he again turned north and examined the waters of Delaware bay, and, following the eastern coasts of New Jersey, on the 13th of September he anchored his vessel within Sandy Hook. After a week's delay Hudson passed through the narrows, and during ten days continued to ascend the noble river which now bears his name. It was not until his vessel had passed beyond the site of the city of Hudson, and a boat had advanced probably higher than the city of Albany, that he appears to have relinquished all hopes of being able to reach the Pacific by this inland passage.

14. In the following year the Dutch East Indian Company fitted out a ship with merchandize, to traffic with the natives of the country which Hudson had explored. The voyage being prosperous, the traffic was continued and increased. When the English Captain Argall visited the island of Manhattan in 1613, on his return from breaking up the French settlement of Port Royal, he found a few rude huts, which the Dutch had erected there as a sum-

mer station for those who traded with the natives. Unable to make any resistance against the force of Argall, the Dutch quietly submitted to the English claim of sovereignty over the country. On his departure, however, they continued their traffic, and erected a rude fort on the southern part of the Island. In 1615 they began a settlement at Albany, and erected a fort, which was called Fort Orange. They also gave the name of New Netherlands to the country which was under their dominion.

15. In the meantime the little English settlement in Virginia was reduced to the brink of ruin. Sir George Somers, on his visiting it, found the colonists reduced to sixty, who all embarked with him for England, and broke up the settlement. Fortunately, however, they were met, the day after they sailed, by Lord Delaware, who was appointed governor, and who persuaded them to return. Under the administration of this wise and able man order and contentment were again restored. New settlers, to the amount of three hundred, arrived under the command of Thomas Gates, and things began to assume a new aspect.

16. In 1614 Captain John Smith, who had already obtained distinction in Virginia, explored the coast from the Penobscot River to Cape Cod with great care. He gave to this country the name of New England, which was confirmed by Prince Charles, and has ever since been retained. For several years he made various attempts to settle this territory, which extended from the 40th to the 48th degrees of north latitude, and had been conveyed as

absolute property to the council of Plymouth, a company established in England.

17. To this country a noble band of emigrants, who, being dissenters from the established church of England, were called Puritans, and were persecuted for their opinions, came and formed a permanent settlement. They had emigrated to Holland as early as 1608. Notwithstanding they had been driven from their endeared homes by the rod of persecution, they loved England still, and desired to retain their mother tongue, and to live under the government of their native land. This love of country, which always animates the minds of the good and virtuous, induced them to seek a second England in the wilds of America. They sailed from Delft Haven in Holland on the 1st of August, 1620, and from Plymouth in England on the 16th of September. After a long and dangerous voyage they discerned the shores of Cape Cod on the 19th of November, and on the 21st entered Cape Cod harbour. Exploring parties were sent on shore to make discoveries, and select a place for settlement. On the 21st of December they landed in the harbour, which they called Plymouth, after the port from which they had sailed.

18. The settlement of New Jersey was begun in 1623 by a party under Captain Cornelius May. The first colonization of the province, however, dates more properly from the founding of Elizabethtown in 1664. New Hampshire was settled in 1623—Lord Baltimore commenced settling Maryland in 1633—settlements were formed in Connecticut and Rhode Island in 1634 and

1636, in Vermont in 1664, and in South Carolina in 1670.

19. A regular, prudent and wise plan of colonization was commenced by William Penn in 1668 under the right of a royal charter. He honourably purchased the land from the Indians, and his colony, to which he gave the name of Pennsylvania, prospered more than any other. His measures were just and enlightened, and his name will ever be regarded with esteem and veneration.

20. From this time colonization proceeded rapidly, the whole coast being settled by the English; the Dutch settlement at Manhattan, then called New Belgia, and now New York, and a purchase, made from the Indians by some Swedes and Fins, of the lands between Cape Henlopen and the Delaware, to which they gave the name of Swedeland, only excepted.

Questions on Part II.—Chapter 4.

What are the divisions of Chapter IV ?

I.—1. Who now arrived in Canada ? What regiment did he bring with him ? What is said of it ? Was this an important accession to the colony ?

2. What is said of the policy of Colbert ? What advantages were acquired ? Name the effect. What spirit was diffused among the people ?

3. What is said of the viceroy ? Give an account of his measures. What effect was produced, and what proposal was made ?

4. Which of the tribes kept aloof, and whom did the Mohawks kill ? Who soon appeared at Quebec ? How were they received ? Describe what occurred. What was the consequence of this boast ? What effect had this event ? What did the viceroy determine to do ?

5. Did the Indians hear of his approach? What was their conduct? How did he subsist his troops? What is said of the Indians, and of De Tracy's return?
6. What is said of M. De Tracy? What did he maintain? By whom was he attended? How did he appear on state occasions? Why was this style adopted?
7. Give an account of the final proceedings of M. de Tracy. Whom did he leave as governor-general?

II.—1. Why is the account of the American colonies given?
2. Give an account of the first attempt made by the English to establish a colony. How was it defeated?
3. When were Florida and Carolina discovered, and taken possession of? What discoveries succeeded these? For what purpose was a squadron dispatched by Admiral Coligny, and where did it arrive? What was established? After whom did they name the colony? What happened to this little company?
4. Where was another colony established? How was it preserved?
5. What news reached Spain, and who was sent to Carolina? Give an account of his proceedings.
6. What is said of the French fleet, and of the French settlement in Florida? What dreadful crime did the Spaniards commit? What became of those who fled? Repeat the inscription placed over the French. What happened to the fugitives? What was their fate? By whom was this outrage avenged? Repeat the inscription placed over the Spaniards.
7. How did the attempt of Sir H. Gilbert to form a colony end? Who succeeded him? Of what lands did he take possession? Why did he name this territory Virginia? What places were visited by his vessels?
8. What new colony did Sir Walter form? What mistake did they make? What was the result?
9. Who next arrived in Virginia? What did White find on his arrival? Did he leave a new company? What events took place in 1587? Give an account of the fate of this colony.
10. Who succeeded Gosnold? What places did he visit? When was Acadia settled?
11. Who discovered James' River, and after whom was it named? What of the London Company? What of the first permanent settlement by the English?
12. For what is the year 1600 memorable?
13. What is said of the two voyages made by Hudson? Into

what service did he enter? How far south did he go, and what waters did he examine? What is said of the discovery of Hudson River? How far did he trace it?

14. What was done by the Dutch East India Company? What is said of the traffic? Describe the Dutch settlement on the Island of Manhattan in 1613? Did they submit to Argall? What did they afterwards erect? When was Albany settled? By what name was the country called?
15. To what state were the English in Virginia reduced, and what did they do? By whom were they met? What is said of the administration of Lord Delaware? What of the improvement of the colony?
16. Who explored the coast of New England, and gave it the name it now bears? What attempt did he make? How far did it extend, and to whom had it been conveyed?
17. What is said of the Puritans? What is said of their residence in Holland? What is said of their attachment to England, and of their desire? What did love of country induce them to do? When did they sail? When did they enter Cape Cod harbour? For what purpose were parties sent on shore? When did the pilgrims land?
18. When was the settlement of New Jersey commenced? Give an account of the other settlements.
19. Who commenced a wise plan of settlement? What did he purchase, and what is said of his colony? What is said of his measures?
20. By whom was the whole coast settled? Name the exceptions.

CHAPTER V.

DIVISIONS.

I. Government of M. de Courcelles, 1668.—*II. Government of M. de Frontenac,* 1672.—*III. Government of M. de La Barre,* 1682.—*IV. Government of M. de Denonville,* 1685.—*V. Second Administration of M. de Frontenac,* 1689.

I. GOVERNMENT OF M. DE COURCELLES, 1668.—We now return to the period of De Tracy's retirement, and

the assumption of the government by M. de Courcelles. During his administration little doubt was entertained as to the permanency of the colony. The inhabitants began to extend their settlements, and to cultivate their lands. The officers and soldiers had liberal grants made to them, and a free trade was granted to the country generally.

2. As the number of the men greatly exceeded that of the women, several hundreds were sent from France to Canada. As soon as they arrived, an advertisement was published to let the people know "that a supply had been sent over, and that such as had the means of supporting a wife should have their choice." It is said that the collection consisted of tall, short, fair, brown, fat and lean. So great was the demand that in about a fortnight the whole cargo was disposed of. No historian of the time mentions what the Indians thought of this curious speculation.

3. In 1670 the Church of Quebec was constituted a bishopric; some important measures were also adopted for the better governing of the country, and for maintaining peace with the savages. The trade and agriculture of the country prospered; and the clerical orders became more enthusiastic than ever in their efforts to make proselytes of the Indians.

4. A fatal calamity, however, which had been hitherto unknown in the New World, made its appearance among the tribes north of the St. Lawrence, namely the small-pox. This scourge, more terrible to the savages than all the fire-arms in Europe, carried off more than half their number, and spread a universal panic over the land.

5. Courcelles had requested his recal, and in 1672 on his return from a journey to Cataraqui, where he had fixed upon a spot for building a fort near the present site of Kingston, he found his place supplied. His successor was Louis Count de Frontenac, who was destined to act an important part in Canada.

II. GOVERNMENT OF M. DE FRONTENAC, 1607.—1. Frontenac was able, active, enterprising and ambitious: but proud, overbearing and subject to capricious jealousies. Entering, however, cordially into his predecessor's views in regard to the fort at Cataraqui, he caused it to be built immediately, and actively promoted vast projects for exploring the interior regions of this continent.

2. The brilliant talents of M. de Frontenac were sometimes obscured by prejudices, but his plans for the aggrandisement of Canada were splendid and just. He possessed however a spirit which would not brook contradiction. For having neglected some orders given by him, he imprisoned the intendant-general, M. de Chesnau; the procurator-general he exiled; the governor of Montreal he put under arrest; and the abbé de Salignac, Fenèlon, then superintending the seminary of the St. Sulpicians at Montreal, he imprisoned under pretence of having preached against him. His principal opponent was the bishop, who very properly disapproved of the sale of spirits to the Indians, which was found to produce the most pernicious effects. The Count, however, considered it as at once extremely profitable, and as a means of attaching them to the French interest. The affair, being referred to the

French government, was decided according to the opinion of the bishop and clergy, and the traffic in ardent spirits was strictly prohibited.

3. During the administration of M. de Frontenac, M. de Courcelles, the French general, explored the greater part of Canada, and taught the Indians to regard the colonists with some degree of awe. M. Perrot, an indefatigable traveler, visited all the nations in the vicinity of the great lakes. A tribe of christianized Indians, guided by Father Marquette, were induced to settle at Michilimackinac. And the christianized Iroquois, who had been separated from the rest of their nation, were settled on the south side of the St. Lawrence at Sault St. Louis. The intendant-general, M. Talon, was a man of profound views, and had done much to extend the authority of France into the most distant part of Canada. Having reason to conclude from the report of the Indians that there flowed, west of the Lakes, a vast river, called the Mississippi or "Father of Waters," he determined not to leave America until he should ascertain the truth of this important information. For this purpose he employed Father Marquette, who had previously travelled over the greater part of Canada, and with him he associated M. Tonti, a merchant of Quebec of well known abilities and experience.

4. They proceeded to Lake Michigan, ascended the Fox River, whence they crossed the country to the River Esconsin (Wisconsin), which they descended until it unites with the Mississippi. They floated down its stream in a

bark canoe as far as to some villages of the Illinois, a few miles below the confluence of the Mississippi and Missouri. They then descended the River to Arkansas, or to the 33rd degree of north latitude, when, being convinced that the River emptied itself in the gulf of Mexico, they returned. Thus the Mississippi was discovered by the way of Canada. The advantages it held out, however, were neglected for some time, owing to the death of Father Marquette, and the return of M. Talon to France.

5. In 1678 the Sieur de La Sale, accompanied by Chevalier Tonti, arrived from France. The king having granted him the seigniory of Cataraqui near fort Frontenac, he proceeded thither, built a vessel, and sailed to Niagara, accompanied by Tonti and Father Hennepin, a Flemish Recollet. Here they remained during winter, attending to the fur trade, and in the summer they built a vessel for navigating Lake Erie. They sailed up that lake, and proceeded afterwards by different routes to Michilimackinac. They then parted, Hennepin proceeding to the Illinois, and La Sale returning to Cataraqui. It was not until the year 1682 that the Mississippi was descended to the Sea. This great object was accomplished by La Sale. All the country watered by that mighty river was then nominally taken possession of in the name of Louis XIV., in whose honour it was named Louisiana.

6. At this period the court of France, finding that it was impossible for Frontenac and the intendant, M. de

Chesnau, to act together, recalled both, and M. de La Barre was sent out as the new viceroy.

III. Government of M. de La Barre, 1682.—1. Soon after the appointment of the new viceroy the Iroquois assumed a tone of defiance, and made formidable preparations for war. These caused great apprehensions of a general war among the Indians, and the state of Canada became alarming in the highest degree, as the whole population consisted only of nine thousand persons.

2. The military strength of Canada had been reduced greatly in consequence of many of the troops having become proprietors and cultivators of land. M. de La Barre, however, determined upon war, and, having obtained a reinforcement of two hundred men, advanced up the St. Lawrence. He was met at Montreal by a deputation from the cantons, who made strong professions of friendship, but he considered them as unworthy of credit. He directed all his force against the Senecas, because it was through their country that the English had penetrated to the fur trade on the Lakes. He found, however, that the tribes had determined to make common cause, and had received ample assurances of aid from New York, which had been taken possession of by the English. Through their various settlements the English held a kind of dominion over the Iroquois country, and they endeavoured with success to alienate them from the French, chiefly by dealing with the tribes on more advantageous terms.

3. The Iroquois soon found it their interest not only to

carry all their furs to the English market but to buy up those of the other tribes in alliance with France. Heavy complaints were constantly made by the French, but the Indians treated them with great indifference. They shrewdly discovered, in the eager competition between these two European nations, the means of rendering their own position more secure and imposing.

4. After meeting the deputies at Montreal, M. de La Barre proceeded to the northern shore of Lake Ontario, where he had another interview with the Indians. He assumed a lofty tone, complained of their inroads into the country of the tribes in alliance with France, and of their having conducted the English to the Lakes, and enabled them to supplant the commerce of his countrymen. He concluded by stating that, unless reparation was made for these injuries, with a promise to abstain from them in future, war and devastation of their country must be the immediate consequence. The deputies very coolly replied "that he appeared to speak like one in a dream, and that, if he would open his eyes, he would see himself wholly destitute of the means of executing these formidable threats." With regard to the English they said "that they had allowed them to pass through their country on the same principle on which they had given permission to his people to pass." They professed themselves anxious "that the hatchet should still remain buried, unless the country granted to them should be attacked." The Onondago deputies guaranteed reparation for any actual plunder inflicted on French traders, but added that

no more could be conceded, and that the army must be immediately withdrawn. Humiliating as these terms were after such lofty threats and preparations, De La Barre had no choice but to comply and return to Quebec.

5. Here he found that a fresh reinforcement had been landed. The letters he received from court intimated the expectation that he was carrying on a triumphant war with the Five Nations, and conveyed from the king an absurd and cruel request, that he would send a number of Iroquois to man the galleys.

6. When the real issue of the campaign was reported at court, great dissatisfaction was felt. The governor was immediately pronounced unfit for his situation, and was superseded by the Marquis de Denonville.

IV. Government of de Denonville, 1685.—1. This active and brave officer immediately on his arrival proceeded to Cataraqui, now Kingston, with about two thousand troops. After a very short time he declared his conviction that the Iroquois could never be conciliated, and that it was necessary either to extirpate them or to reduce them to a state of entire dependence. He proposed also to erect a strong fort at Niagara, to prevent them from introducing the English fur trade into the Upper Lakes.

2. An instance of treachery stains the character of Denonville. Having under various pretences assembled a number of the chiefs at Fort Frontenac (Kingston), he iniquitously put them in irons, and sent them off to France, to fulfil the king's absurd wishes. He then proceeded

towards the Seneca country, where he met with but little opposition, and marched for ten days, burning and destroying all grain and provisions not required by his troops. Although the governor of New York remonstrated with him, urging that the Iroquois were the subjects of England, yet he persevered, and carried into execution his plan of erecting and garrisoning a fort at Niagara. He then found it necessary to return to the Canadian side of Lake Ontario.

3. Scarcely had he reached home before the Iroquois showed that they were masters of the country. They attacked Fort Niagara, and razed it to the ground. They covered the Lake with their canoes, attacked Fort Frontenac, burned all the corn-stacks in the neighbourhood, and captured a French barque, laden with provisions and stores. The Indian allies of the French attacked the Iroquois of Sorel, and committed many depredations on the English settlements, plundering the property and scalping the inhabitants.

4. At length both parties desired peace, and a treaty was set on foot for this purpose. Deputies from the Iroquois proceeded to Montreal, leaving at two days' distance behind them twelve hundred of their countrymen, fit for immediate action. Proud of their commanding situation, they demanded the restoration of the chiefs, unjustly seized, and of all other captives. They allowed the governor only four days to consider the offer, threatening, if not accepted, immediately to set fire to the buildings and corn-fields, and to murder the inhabitants.

The deepest consternation prevailed at Montreal, and Denonville found himself under the necessity of accepting these humiliating conditions, and of requesting back from France the chiefs he so basely sent thither. This deep and deserved mortification was a just recompense for his treachery to the Indians.

5. This treaty was interrupted by the management of a young Huron chief, named Kondiaronk, or "The Rat." He was mortified at the French making peace with the Iroquois without consulting the Hurons, who wished them exterminated. In order to accomplish his intentions, he marched with a chosen band to Cataraqui. Hearing that the deputies and hostages to conclude the treaty were to pass down the St. Lawrence, he proceeded onwards, and laid wait for them just above the Cascades, about thirty miles from Montreal. Here he killed or captured them, as they landed from their canoes. He then informed those whom he had made prisoners that this had been done at the command of the governor, who had pretended to him that they were a party coming to plunder the French settlements. He seemed to be quite shocked at having been seduced into such an act of treachery, and sent them all home except one, whom he kept under pretence of replacing one of his warriors whom he had lost at the Cascades. He then returned to Michilimackinac, where, delivering the unfortunate prisoner to the French commander, he so represented matters as to induce him to put him to death. His next step was to set at liberty an old Iroquois, who had witnessed the execution. "Go," said he, "return to

your country, and spend the remainder of your days in peace. Relate to the tribe the barbarous conduct of the French, who, while they are amusing your nation with offers of peace, seized every opportunity of robbing and murdering them, and tell them that all my entreaties could not save the life of one man, whom I took from your tribe, and adopted to replace the warrior I lost at the Cascades." This masterpiece of dissimulation had the desired effect. The Iroquois, instead of coming, as Denonville expected, to conclude a treaty, landed on the island of Montreal to the number of twelve hundred, and laid it waste with fire, killing a thousand of the colonists, and carrying off two hundred prisoners. After spreading devastation over the whole island, they embarked in their canoes, having lost only thirty of their warriors.

6. The war on both sides was at this time carried on with the greatest barbarity. The French gave for every human scalp the sum of forty livres, and the Iroquois rushed on the French with such suddenness that the war-whoop of the victor and the death-shriek of the vanquished were heard almost at the same moment. The English at Albany were so much alarmed that they prepared to abandon the country, but at this crisis the New England colonies came to a mutual understanding, and formed a coalition for self-defence.

7. The state of affairs in Canada appeared altogether desperate. The Fort of Niagara had been razed by the Indians, Fort Frontenac was blown up, and abandoned by the French, and two ships, that were

built for the purpose of navigating Lake Ontario, were burnt, to prevent them from falling into the hands of the Iroquois. War, famine and disease seemed as if combined for the utter destruction of the Colony.

8. In this extremity it was judged necessary to place at the head of affairs an officer possessing energy of character and address in dealing with the natives. These qualities were found united in the Count de Frontenac, who during his former administration had made himself both beloved and feared by the Indians.

V. SECOND ADMINISTRATION OF M. DE FRONTENAC, 1689.—1. The Count brought out with him the captive chiefs, whom Denonville had so unjustly seized. So fascinating were his manners that he completely gained their favour, Oureonharé, the principal one, remaining ever after most strongly attached to him. All the chiefs, indeed, had so great a regard for him that he entertained hopes of conciliating the Iroquois without much difficulty. With this view he sent a deputy of that nation with four of his captive countrymen to announce his return, and his wish to resume amicable relations. Oureonharé transmitted a message, requesting them to send an embassy to their "ancient father," from whom they would experience much tenderness and esteem.

2. The Iroquois council sent back the same deputies with six belts, intimating their resolution, which was expressed in lofty and bitter terms. Choosing to consider "Oninthio" one and the same, though they knew that Frontenac was not the offending person, they complained

"That his rods of correction had been too sharp and cutting; that the roots of the tree of peace, which he had planted at Fort Frontenac, had been withered by blood, and the ground had been polluted." They demanded atonement for these injuries, and that Oureonharé with his captive companions should be sent back previous to the liberation of the French prisoners. "Oninthio would then be free," they said, "to plant again the tree of liberty, but not in the same place."

3. Two circumstances emboldened the Iroquois to take so high a tone at this period. The first was that, in consequence of the revolution in England, the cause of James II. was warmly embraced by the French, and the two kingdoms were at open war. On this account the Indians could depend upon the cordial co-operation of the English. The second was that they were engaged in a treaty with the Ottawas for a better market for their furs.

4. Frontenac, finding his attempts at negociation fruitless, resolved to act with such vigour as to humble the Iroquois. He therefore collected his allies, and divided them amongst his regular troops, and several English settlements were surprised and pillaged. Schenectady, the frontier town of New York, was attacked by a party of one hundred French, and a number of Indians; the fort and every house were pillaged and burnt, and all the horrors of Indian warfare let loose upon the inhabitants. The English accounts say that sixty-three men, women and children were massacred in cold blood.

5. His next care was to send detachments to convey

to Montreal the furs which had been stored at Michilimackinac. This they effected, and a large party, who attempted to attack them, was completely defeated. Notwithstanding these successes the Iroquois maintained the same hostility and haughtiness. The old allies of the French, seeing them resume their former energy, determined to prefer them to the English. The Ottawas owned that they had made some progress in a negociation with the English, but that, as soon as they heard of the return of "their ancient father," they had broken it off. The Hurons denied having entered into any treaty which could detach them from their "beloved Oninthio."

6. The attention of Frontenac was called in the autumn of this year from the Indians to the English, who had determined to strike a blow, which, they hoped would deprive the French of all their possessions in America. This was a plan of attack on Canada, which was carried out by the English colonists at an expense of £15,000. It was two-fold; first, by land, and inland navigation on the southern frontier, and, second, by a fleet sent from Boston to attack Quebec.

7. The squadron under the command of Sir William Phipps appeared as far up the River as Tadousac before the alarm reached Quebec. Frontenac immediately hastened to strengthen the defences of the place, which consisted of rude embankments of timber and earth, and to put it into as good condition as it was possible for him to do in so short a time.

8. On the 16th of October the squadron, consisting of

thirty-four vessels of different descriptions, advanced as far as Beauport. Sir William Phipps immediately sent a flag of truce on shore to summon the town to surrender. This was gallantly rejected by Frontenace. This officer, who was a man of great pride, lived at the time in the castle of St. Louis amidst all the splendour with which he could possibly surround himself. Being resolved to astonish the English officer who was sent on shore with the flag of truce, he caused him to be met by a French major, who placed a bandage over his eyes, and conducted him by a very circuitous route to the castle. Every delusion was practised to make him believe that he was in the midst of a numerous garrison. On arriving at the castle the bandage was removed, and he found himself in the presence of the governor-general, the intendant, the bishop and a large staff of French officers in full uniform, who were clustered together in the middle of the hall. With the greatest self-possession the young officer presented to Frontenac a summons to surrender in the name of William and Mary, king and queen of England. Frontenac gave a most spirited answer, refusing to acknowledge any king of England but James II. The Englishman wished to have his answer in writing. Frontenac peremptorily refused, saying, "I am going to answer your master by the cannon's mouth. He shall be taught this is not the manner in which a person of my rank ought to be summoned." The bandage being replaced, the officer was conducted with the same mysteries to his boat, and was no sooner on board the admiral's vessel than the batteries began to play upon the fleet.

9. On the 18th fifteen hundred English troops landed near the river St. Charles, but not without sustaining great loss from the constant fire kept up by the French from amongst the rocks and bushes. Four of the largest vessels were anchored opposite the town, and commenced a bombardment; but the fire from the batteries was directed with such effect as to compel them to remove up the River beyond Cape Diamond. A sharp skirmish took place on the 19th, and on the 20th an action was fought, in which the French made a gallant stand and compelled the English to retreat to Beauport, leaving their cannon and ammunition. Two days after they re-embarked and returned to Boston.

10. Owing to the bad management of Sir William Phipps this expedition was attended with great loss of life, seven or eight of his vessels being wrecked in the St. Lawrence. The expedition against Montreal did not take place at the appointed time, owing to a want of concert between the parties, and Frontenac was thus enabled to concentrate all his strength and oppose the plans of the English with vigilance and success.

Questions on Part II.—Chapter 5.

What are the divisions of Chapter V. ?

I.—1. To what period do we now return ? What improvements took place ?

2. What new kind of importation arrived in Canada ? What was published on their arrival ? Describe the collection. Were they all disposed of ?

3. What is said of the church of Quebec? What is said of trade and agriculture, and of the clerical orders?
4. What calamity now visited Canada? What is said of this scourge?
5. What is said of Courcelles and his journey to Cataraqui? By whom was he succeeded?

II.—1. Describe Frontenac. How did he conduct public affairs?
2. What is said of his talents and plans? Give an account of his arbitraray conduct to various persons. Who was his principal opponent? How did the count regard it? What was the result?
3. Who explored Canada at this time? Who visited the Indians near the Lake? What tribe settled at Michilimackinac? Where were the christianized Iroquois settled? What is said of M. Talon? What is said of the report he had heard, and of his determination? Who were the persons employed by him in this important investigation?
4. What river did they ascend? What river did they descend, and how far? How far did they float down the Mississippi? How far did they explore the river? What is said of the discovery of the Mississippi? Why were the advantages of this discovery neglected?
5. Who arrived from France in 1678? What is said of De La Sale? Give an account of their winter employments. Give an account of their visit to Michilimackinac, and of their parting. In what year was the Mississippi descended to the Sea, and after what king was the country called?
6. What line of conduct did the court of France adopt?

III.—1. What preparations were making by the Iroquois? In what state was Canada at this period?
2. How had the military strength been reduced? Give an account of the proceedings of M. de La Barre, the new Governor. By whom was he met? Why did he direct his force against the Senecas? What did he find? What is said of the English?
3. In what manner did the Iroquois act? By whom were complaints made? What did they discover?
4. Whither did M. de La Barre proceed? How did he conduct himself? What did he state to them? Repeat the answer. With regard to the English, what did they profess? What did the Onondaga deputies promise? Was De La Barre obliged to comply?
5. What did he find at Quebec? Repeat the purport of the letters from court.
6. How was the news of his failure received at court? What followed?

IV.—1. Whither did Denonville proceed? Did he adopt measures of conciliation? Why did he propose to erect a fort at Niagara?

2. Relate an instance of treachery committed by Denonville. Describe his proceedings in the Seneca country. What is said of the governor of New York? Whither did he then go?

3. What of the Iroquois? Give an account of their proceedings. What reprisals were made?

4. What change now took place? Describe the proceedings of the deputies. What did they demand? What did they threaten? Was Denonville obliged to accept these conditions? What is said of this transaction?

5. By whom was this treaty interrupted? Why? To what place did he march? Where did he lie in wait for the Iroquois? What was the result? What did he then tell his prisoners? Under what pretence did he detain one of the Iroquois? What did he do with the unfortunate man? Whom did he then set at liberty? What did he say to him? What message did he send to the tribes? Had this the intended effect? Where did the Iroquois land, and what devastation did they commit? What was the result?

6. In what manner was the war carried on? What is said of the French, and of the Iroquois? Give an account of the English colonists.

7. Give an account of the affairs in Canada. Give an account of Niagara. Give an account of Frontenac. Give an account of two ships. What threatened to destroy the Colony?

8. Whom was it necessary to place at the head of affairs? In whom were those qualities found united?

V.—1. Whom did Frontenac bring with him? What is said of Frontenac's manners? What hopes did he entertain? Whom did he send to the Iroquois, and for what purpose? What message was sent by Oureonharé?

2. Give an account of their answer. What did they choose to consider Oninthio? Of what did they complain? What did they demand? What did they say of Oninthio?

3. Why did the Iroquois assume so lofty a tone? Mention the first cause. What was the consequence? Mention the second reason.

4. How did Frontenac resolve to act? Give an account of his measures. Give an account of the attack on Schenectady. What do the English accounts say?

5. What was his next care? Was this effected? What is said of the Iroquois? What is said of the other nations?

Repeat the excuses made by the Ottawas. What was said of the Hurons?

6. To what people was the attention of Frontenac next directed? By whom was this plan carried out? Describe the plan of attack.
7. Was the arrival of this squadron expected? How did Frontenac provide for the defence of Quebec?
8. When did the squadron arrive at Beauport? What was sent by Sir William? Was it accepted? Where did Frontenac reside? What did he resolve, and by whom was the officer met? What was practised upon him? In whose presence did he find himself? What was the conduct of the English officer? Whom did Frontenac refuse to acknowledge? What did the Englishman request, and what was Frontenac's answer? In what manner was he conducted back? What occurred afterwards?
9. Where did the English land, and what reception did they meet? Describe the bombardment. What were the vessels compelled to do? What took place on the 19th? Give an account of the battle of the 20th. When did they return to Boston?
10. With what was this expedition attended? Why did not the expedition against Montreal take place? What did this enable Frontenac to do?

CHAPTER VI.

DIVISIONS.

I. Continuation of the Administration of M. de Frontenac, 1691.—*II. Administration of M. de Caillières*, 1698.—*III. Administration of M. de Vaudreuil* 1703.

I. CONTINUATION OF THE ADMINISTRATION OF M. DE FRONTENAC, 1691.—1. During the year 1691 the Iroquois with their English and native allies advanced

along the River Sorel, or Richelieu, to attack Montreal. De Caillières, a very able officer, then held the command of that city. He had assembled nearly eight hundred Indians in addition to his own countrymen, and the assailants after a very sharp contest were obliged to retreat. They burnt thirty houses and barns, and carried off several prisoners, whom they put to the most cruel torture.

2. At length, however, de Frontenac by the unremitting vigour of his measures secured the defence of the Colony so far that in 1692 the inhabitants were enabled to cultivate their lands, and the fur trade was renewed and carried on with considerable advantage.

3. In the beginning of 1694 the Iroquois made overtures of peace. Two Onondagoes arrived at Montreal, and asked the governor if certain deputies, who were on their way, would be received. Though they were answered in the affirmative, several months elapsed before they appeared. They were well received, and brought several belts with them, one of which expressed the most friendly disposition, and solicited the restoration of the fort at Cataraqui.

4. On their return home Oureonharé accompanied them. When he came back, he brought with him several persons of distinction, who had been long held in captivity by the Indians. Though the first belts brought by the deputies were friendly, the other were obscure, and all attempts to obtain an explanation were fruitless. All that was contemplated merely seemed to be "to suspend the hatchet." The Count rejected all the belts except one,

declaring that, unless more friendly sentiments were entertained, he could not long suspend the threatened blow.

5. Unwilling to come to an open rupture with a people who could muster three thousand warriors, he endeavoured to gain time. In the meanwhile he re-established the fort at Cataraqui, and strengthened the outposts, intending in the summer to commence more active measures.

6. At length in June, 1696, all the forces that could be mustered at Cataraqui marched into the canton of Onondago. On reaching a lake, they found, suspended from a tree, two bundles of rushes, which intimated that fourteen hundred and thirty-four warriors were waiting to engage them. They sailed across the Lake immediately, and formed themselves in regular order of battle, expecting to engage their enemies. De Caillières commanded the left wing, the Chevalier de Vaudreuil, the right, and De Frontenac, then seventy-six years of age, was carried in the centre in an elbow-chair. The Five Nations, however, did not appear, and their principal fortress was found reduced to ashes. It soon, indeed, became evident that the Indians had determined to let them march through their country unmolested.

7. The Oneidas sent deputies to Frontenac, but he would accept nothing short of unconditional surrender. De Vaudreuil marched into their country, and laid it waste. It had been determined to treat the Cayugas in the same manner, but the Count returned rather suddenly to Montreal, for which the French writers severely censure him. He might, it is thought, have completely humbled the

Iroquois at this time. He could not, however, be prevailed upon to destroy the canton of the Goyoquins (or Cayugas), of which his friend Oureonharé was chief.

8. The shameful manner in which the Indian allies of the French were treated with regard to their chief source of wealth, the fur trade, gave continual cause of complaint and discontent. This traffic was carried on by an adventurous but desperate race, called "*coureurs des bois.*" It was a strict monopoly, the merchants fitting out the *coureurs* with canoes and merchandize, and reaping profits so ample that furs to the value of 8000 crowns were procured by French worth 1000 crowns.

9. As soon as the Indians found out the true value of their commodities, they made loud and incessant complaints. In order to conciliate them, it was proposed that they should bring their own furs, and dispose of them at Montreal. The governor, however, and the other members of the administration, objected that this would bring the Indian allies from the retirement of their forests into the immediate neighbourhood of the Five Nations and of the British; and they dreaded that, while the profits of the fur trade would be lost, a general confederation of the tribes might be effected.

18. In the meantime the Iroquois continued the war with vigor, though both they and the English began to wish for peace. Negotiations were, however, entered into with them through Oureonharé, in whom Frontenac placed great and deserved confidence, but his sudden death at Quebec retarded them. Their success was, however,

secured by the treaty of peace signed at Ryswick, September 12th, 1697, and the English and French governors mutually entered into arrangements for maintaining harmony among the Indians. The anxious desire manifested by both nations to secure the friendship of the Iroquois flattered that bold and deceitful people, and gave them an exalted opinion of themselves. The object of both the French and the English should have been to diminish their power, but this rather tended to increase their consequence and conceit.

11. Soon after the conclusion of peace Louis Count de Frontenac died in the seventy-eighth year of his age, upwards of twenty of which he had spent in Canada. His great personal abilities preserved this colony to France, and always secured to him the confidence of the king, the respect of his officers and the esteem of the Indians. He was buried in the Recollet church at Quebec, which formerly stood near the site of the present English cathedral. The only memorial of him now to be found in the city is in the street which was called from his family name Buade Street.

II. ADMINISTRATION OF M. DE CAILLIÈRES, 1698.—1. Frontenac was succeeded by De Caillières, who had been for sometime governor of Montreal. He administered the affairs of the Colony with more steadiness and prudence and with equal vigor and address, and in 1700 effected a general pacification among the Indian tribes. Upon the exchange of prisoners which took place at this period a most surprising and mortifying fact transpired.

The natives early sought their homes; the greater part of the French captives, however, were found to have contracted such an attachment to the wild freedom of the woods that neither the commands of the king nor the entreaties of their friends could induce them to quit their Indian associates.

2. Peace had scarcely been concluded between the savage tribes when it was broken by their civilized neighbours. The succession of Philip of Anjou to the throne of Spain gave rise to a long and eventful war between France and Spain. It was begun by Louis XIV. with every prospect of giving law to all Europe. Instead of this the exploits of our great Marlborough and Prince Eugene and the fields of Blenheim and Ramilies reduced him to the lowest condition, and at one time seemed to place his throne in peril. The French colonists were thus left to their own resources, while England conceived the bold design of uniting within her territory the whole of North America.

3. The lamented death of De Caillières, its able governor, placed Canada in a critical state, and endangered the French power in the colony.

III. Administration of M. de Vaudreuil, 1703. —1. The Count de Vaudreuil, who succeeded, proved himself worthy of his high office, and for several years managed to prevent the colonists from being molested, and to cherish the trade and cultivation of the country. In 1708 he carried warlike operations into the British frontier settlements, having previously negotiated for the neu-

trality of the Iroquois, who were flattered by being treated as an independent power. Little success, however attended these operations, and he was soon compelled again' to resume a defensive position.

2. The persecutions of the Protestants in France caused at this time a religious animosity to be added to the hatred entertained towards the French. This unfortunately encouraged a spirit of discord amongst the colonists themselves. A people like the New Englanders, who had themselves but just escaped from persecution, could not look with indifference upon their persecuted French Protestant brethren. Some of the persons in power amongst them, however, did not sympathize in this sentiment, and estrangement from each other and opposition to authority increased daily.

3. During all the changes which took place in the colonies it is surprising how the Iroquois contrived to preserve their neutrality. The situation of their country between the French and English possessions contributed to this neutrality, as they had it in their power to gain information on both sides. The court that was paid to them by both powers probably fostered in them habits of dissimulation. When the English called the Five Nations to assist them against the French, they showed the greatest unwillingness. They alleged that, "when they concluded a treaty, they intended to keep it, but that the Europeans seemed to enter into such engagements solely for the purpose of breaking them;" and one old chief, with the rude freedom of his country, intimated that "the nations were both drunk."

4. In 1709 a person of the name of Vetch laid before the court of Queen Anne a plan for the conquest of Canada, and was supplied with authority and resources, supposed to be sufficient for its accomplishment. The English forces which had been destined for the St. Lawrence were, however, required in Portugal; and thus the Marquis de Vaudreuil had time to make better preparations for defence.

5. The British in the meantime had occupied Lakes George and Champlain, and erected forts. But the Iroquois treacherously deceived them, and attempted to poison the water they drank. They immediately abandoned the enterprise, and returned to New York, after burning their canoes and reducing their forts to ashes.

6. Canada now enjoyed a short interval of repose, though it was understood that the English were making active preparations for a fresh expedition, and were sparing no pains to secure the co-operation of the Five Nations. At this time the French were engaged in a desperate struggle with an Indian nation, called the Outagamis, or Foxes. These people, who dwelt in the upper territory, were at last reduced to the necessity of humbly soliciting terms of peace, but the French were persuaded by their savage auxiliaries to push matters to the last extremity, and this unfortunate tribe was nearly exterminated.

7. A combined land and sea expedition against Canada took place in 1711. This expedition was shamefully managed, and the British fleet, owing to tempestuous weather and ignorance of the coast, met with so many

disasters that it was obliged to return to Boston. They lost at the Seven Islands near the mouth of the River St. Lawrence in one day eight vessels, and eight hundred and eighty-four officers, soldiers and seamen.

8. The restoration of peace between France and England by the treaty of Utrecht took place in 1713, by which France retained Canada, but ceded Acadia and Newfoundland, and made over to Great Britain all her claims to the sovereignty of the Five Nations. This once more left the colony an interval of rest, which lasted ten years, during which her trade and resources were greatly increased. The Marquis de Vaudreuil availed himself of the peace to strengthen the fortifications of Quebec and Montreal, the training of the military, amounting to 5000 in a population of 25,000, was carefully attended to, and barracks were constructed. An assessment was levied on the inhabitants for the support of the troops and the erection of fortifications. During the remainder of M. de Vaudreuil's administration, which was terminated by his death in 1726, the province prospered under his vigilant, firm and just government.

9. Charlevoix, a French traveler, visited Canada in 1720 and 1721, and gives a most interesting description of the country. Quebec then contained about seven thousand inhabitants, both the Upper and Lower Towns were built, and the view from the summit of the rock when the shores should be cultivated, he anticipated, could not be equaled. The society was extremely agreeable, and the French language spoken in its greatest purity. The

military officers and the noblesse, however, under this gay exterior concealed great poverty. They considered that their English neighbours knew better how to accumulate wealth than they did, but were quite ignorant how to enjoy it; whilst they understood thoroughly the most elegant and agreeable modes of spending it. The only employment suited to their taste was the fur trade, and little fortunes were occasionally made, but they were in such haste to expend these in pleasure and display that he compares them to little hillocks of sand in the deserts of Africa, which rise and disappear almost at the same instant.

10. The patient and laborious pursuits of agriculture had at this time drawn little attention; the lumber trade was yet in its infancy; and the absence of gold and silver had always caused New France to be regarded as of little importance. The coasts of the St. Lawrence were already laid out in seigneuries, and tolerably cultivated. On the River Becancour dwelt a baron bearing the title of that river, and holding the office of inspector of highways, though he lived almost in a desert. Three Rivers was an agreeable place, containing about eight hundred inhabitants; the iron mines had not yet been worked, though they had been for some time discovered.

11. Coasting along the southern shore of Lake St. Peter, he made particular observations on the district of St. Francis, where, though the land was of excellent quality, he found the farmers few and poor. Of the beauty of the island and city of Montreal he speaks in terms of great admiration, as indeed most subsequent visitors have

done. He makes no estimate of the population, but we know from other sources that in 1720 it did not exceed three thousand, though both the upper and lower parts of the town had been built, and a suburb had been commenced. The neighbouring villages of Sault St. Louis and Montmagny were inhabited by friendly Indians, who served as barriers against their more savage countrymen.

12. Above Montreal only detached stations for defence and trade existed, and he passed with his suite through the rapids to Lake Ontario in Indian canoes. At fort Cataraqui, now Kingston, his description gives no intimation of the existence of cultivation or settlement. His voyage along the southern shore, performed in slender canoes, obliged him to follow every winding, and often to sail many miles out of the direct way.

13. At length he reached the River Niagara, and came to a cottage which was inhabited by the Sieur de Joncaire. Here he found several officers of rank and a few soldiers, but apparently little cultivation.

14. Charlevoix of course visited the Falls, which must have been somewhat different then than they now are, if we may trust to the representation given of them by Father Hennepin, who was there about forty years before Charlevoix. This sketch represents a projecting rock upon the west or Canadian side of the River, which turned a part of the water into the main fall. Nothing of this kind now exists, therefore a change must have taken place, but of what amount no monument remains to point out. The general opinion is that they have receded considera-

bly, and this opinion is borne out by Professor Lyell and the principal geologists of Canada and the United States.

15. The Indians carried the canoes of the party from the River below to the River above the Falls, and, after viewing these amazing cataracts with great delight, they embarked and proceeded to Lake Erie. Charlevoix speaks of the climate with raptnre, and says that, as he sailed along the Canadian shore, he found "water clear as the purest fountain, abundance of game, and a beautiful landscape, bounded by the noblest forests in the world."

16. Five days' sail along these lovely shores brought him to Detroit. He regarded this as the most beautiful and fruitful part of all Canada. A French fort had been erected fifteen years before, but various untoward accidents had reduced it to almost nothing. Then he proceeded to Michilimackinac, near the adjoining Lakes Huron, Michigan and Superior. He does not appear to have visited Lake Superior, which has indeed been till lately very little known. Now, however, it attracts the attention of the whole continent, vast mines of the richest copper having been recently found both on the Canadian and United States' shores. Like the other places mentioned in his voyage, Michilimackinac was a mere fort, surrounded by an Indian village. It appears, indeed, from his whole description that above Montreal there was nothing at this time which could be called a colony.

Questions on Part II.—Chapter 6.

What are the divisions of Chapter VI ?

I.—1. What is said of the Iroquois ? By whom was Montreal commanded ? What troops had he assembled ? And what was the result ? Give an account of their cruelties.

2. What did Frontenac at length secure for the colonists ?

3. What overtures did the Iroquois now make ? Who arrived at Montreal ? Did they arrive quickly ? How were they received ? And what is said of the belts ?

4. Who accompanied them home ? Who returned with Ourconhare ? What is said of the belts ? What seemed to be contemplated by them ? How did Frontenac act ?

5. What did he endeavour to gain ? Give an account of his proceedings.

6. Into what canton did the French troops march ? How did they receive a notice from the Indians ? Did they proceed ? Describe the order of battle. Did the Five Nations appear ? What is said of their principal fortress ? What soon became evident ?

7. Did Frontenac accept the overtures of the Oneidas ? Who marched into their territory ? Why do the French writers censure Frontenac ? What is it thought he might have done at this time ? Why did he return ?

8. What gave the Indians just cause of offence ? By whom was this traffic carried on ? What is said of this traffic ? And of the profits arising from it ?

9. Did the Indians submit to this ? What was proposed ? What objection was made to this ? What was dreaded ?

10. What is said of the Iroquois and English ? Through whom were negociations entered into ? What retarded them ? How was their success secured ? What effect had this ? What should have been the object of both nations ?

11.—When did Frontenac die ? What is said of him ? Where was he buried ? Where is the only memorial of him now to be found in Quebec ?

II.—1. By whom was Frontenac succeeded ? How did he administer affairs ? And what did he effect ? What transpired at the exchange of prisoners ? What is said of the natives ? What of the French ?

2. By whom was the new peace broken ? To what did the succession of Philip give rise ? By whom was it begun ? What is said of Marlborough and Prince Eugene ? What was the consequence ? What design was formed by England ?

3. What is said of the death of De Caillieres ?

III.—1. Who succeeded ? And how did he manage public affairs ? Into what country did he carry his warlike operations ? What was the result ?

2. How was a religious animosity engendered ? What effect had this ? What is said of the New Englanders ? What of some of the English colonists in power ?

3. What of the Iroquois ? In what manner were they enabled to do this, and what habits were fostered in them ? What spirit did the Five Nations evince ? What did they say ? Repeat the sayings of an old chief.

4. What plan was now proposed ? How was it defeated ? What did this enable Vaudreuil to do ?

5. Give an account of the proceedings of the British and of the Iroquois ? What was the result ?

6. What is said of the English ? With whom were the French at war ? To what state were they reduced ? What was the issue ?

7. What took place in 1711 ? What befel the fleet ? How many vessels did the British lose ?

8. Name the conditions of the peace of Utrecht in 1713. What effect had this upon Canada ? What measures were taken by the Marquis ? For what purpose was an assessment levied ? What is said of the administration of M. de Vaudreuil ?

9 Who visited Canada at this time ? What does he say of Quebec ? What of the society, language and noblesse ? What of their opinion of the English ? What of the fur trade ? To what does he compare these little fortunes ?

10. What is said of agriculture ? What of the timber trade ? What of the absence of gold and silver ? How were the coasts laid out ? Where did he find a highway inspector ? What is said of Three Rivers ?

11. What of the district of St. Francis ? What of the beauty of the Island of Montreal ? What of the population ? What of the Indians ?

12. How did he reach Lake Ontario ? What is said of Kingston ? How was this voyage performed ?

13. What river did he enter ? Whom did he find there ?

14. What is said of the Falls ? Describe the sketch given by Father Hennepin. Does this still exist ? What is the general opinion ?

15. How were the canoes conveyed to the river above the Falls ? What does Charlevoix say of the climate, and of the country ?

16. What place did he visit, and how did he regard it? What is said of the French fort? Where did he then go? What is said of Lake Superior? What of Michilimackinac? In what state was the whole country above Montreal in 1721?

CHAPTER VII.

DIVISIONS.

I. Administration of the Marquis de Beauharnois, 1726.—*II. Administration of M. dé Galissoniere,* 1747.—*M. de Jonquiere,* 1749—*and temporarily of the Baron de Longueuil.—III. Administration of M. du Quesne,* 1752.—*IV. Administration of M. de Vaudreuil,* 1755.

I. ADMINISTRATION OF M. DE BEAUHARNOIS, 1726. —1. The death of the Marquis de Vaudreuil in 1726 was deservedly lamented by the Canadians. He was succeeded in 1726 by the Marquis de Beauharnois. His ambitious administration excited greatly the alarm of the English colonists of New York and New England.

2. Beauharnois continued in power twenty years, and diligently employed himself in promoting the interests of the colony. He planned an enterprise to cross America to the South Sea, which did not succeed. He erected also the important fort at Crown Point on Lake Champlain, with several other forts at different places for the purpose of keeping the English within the Alleghany

Mountains, and preventing their approach to the Lake, the St. Lawrence, the Mississippi, and their tributary streams.

3. The war between Great Britain and France led to the reduction of Cape Breton in 1745 by a British naval and military force, assisted by the provincial troops of the New England colonies. The successful battle of Fontenoy in Europe, however, roused the martial spirit of the Canadians, to attempt the re-conquest of Nova Scotia in 1746 and 1747, in which they failed, and the treaty of Aix la Chapelle in 1748 suspended further hostilities.

4. Commissioners were then appointed to settle a boundary line between the British and French territories in North America. The Canadian government immediately proceeded to survey the projected line of demarcation with a great display of military pomp, calculated to impress on the minds of the Indians the idea that France would assert her right to the limits marked. Leaden plates, bearing the arms of France, were sunk at such distances upon this line as the Canadian governor in his liberality pleased to assign to England, and the whole ceremony was conducted with much formality. Such an imprudent step seriously alarmed the Indians, and terminated in their active co-operation with the English for the utter expulsion of the French from North America.

5. About this time a royal edict directed that no country houses should be built but on farms of one acre and a half in front and forty back. This law had the effect of confining the population along the banks of the River, and the whole shore from Quebec to Montreal was

soon settled with cultivated farms. A favourable change took place too in the fur trade, a more liberal and equitable system appears to have been adopted. A large annual fair was opened at Montreal under judicious regulations, and became the general centre of this trade.

II. ADMINISTRATION OF THE COUNT DE GALISSONIERE, 1747.—1. The Count de Galissoniere, a nobleman of great acquirements, succeeded M. de Beauharnois in 1747. He was superseded by the Sieur de la Jonquiere in 1749, who was succeeded temporarily by the Baron de Longueuil until the arrival of the Marquis du Quesne as governor-general.

III. ADMINISTRATION OF THE MARQUIS DU QUESNE, 1752.—1. Du Quesne appears, more openly than any other governor, to have carried on the system of encroaching on the British colonies. So far did he proceed that the fort at Pittsburg, bearing his name, was erected within the confines of Virginia.

2. The British immediately erected another in the immediate vicinity, which they quaintly termed Necessity. To this a garrison was dispatched from Virginia under the command of George Washington, whose name afterwards became so illustrious, and who then held a lieutenant-colonel's commission in the British army. Washington, on his march to assume the command of Fort Necessity, was met by a party from Fort Du Quesne under M. de Jumonville, who peremptorily forbad the English to proceed further. The mandate was answered by a burst of indignation and a volley of musquetry, which killed Jumonville and several

of his men. The French at Fort du Quesne however quickly commenced offensive hostilities, invested Necessity, and obliged Washington to capitulate.

3. A great alarm was now spread through the English settlements, and a plan of common defence was brought forward in a convention held at Albany in July, 1754. At this meeting Benjamin Franklin proposed a general union of the Colonies to resist the French. Though not then acted upon, this document was the basis of the federal union subsequently formed for the overthrow of the British dominion in the present United States.

4. England was at this time preparing for an open war with France, which the ambition of Frederick of Prussia and the state of Europe soon rendered general. A strong fleet with troops was dispatched from France to re-inforce Quebec; an English fleet pursued it, but succeeded in capturing only two frigates, with the engineers and troops on board, on the banks of Newfoundland.

IV. Administration of the Sieur de Vaudreuil, 1755.—1. The Marquis du Quesne having resigned was succeeded by the Sieur de Vaudreuil, the last French governor in Canada. This administration was auspiciously opened by the defeat of the brave but rash General Braddock in one of the defiles of the Alleghany Mountains. Braddock, unaccustomed to Indian warfare, neglected every precaution of scouts and outposts, and refused to make proper preparations for the meeting of the French and their Indian allies. When the British entered a gorge, where retreat was impossible, they poured upon them from

their ambuscade a deadly fire, under which numbers of the unfortunate soldiers fell. Braddock himself was killed, and the remainder of the army was saved only by the intrepidity of Colonel George Washington, who now for the first time distinguished himself, and won back the laurels he had lost at Fort Necessity.

2. These troops having afterwards joined the provincial force under Generals Johnson, Lyman and Shirly, repulsed an attack made by the French under Baron Dieskau. After a battle of four hours' duration the French retreated to Crown Point with a loss of one thousand men and the capture of their leader who was severely wounded.

3. This success restored the drooping spirits of the British army, and these battles helped to train the colonists for those contests which they were to wage with those very men by whose side they now fought hand to hand against the French. Little did Washington then contemplate the destiny that awaited him.

4. France, now fully aware of the importance of Canada, sent out a chosen body of troops under the command of the gallant and experienced Marquis de Montcalm. He obtained a series of successes, terminating by the reduction of the important British forts at Oswego and Fort Edward near Lake George. This victory was stained by the barbarous murder of near two thousand English prisoners by the Indian allies of the French. This monstrous deed completely roused the indignation of the English, and led to those mighty preparations which finally destroyed the power of France in America.

5. As some compensation for these losses, the fortified and garrisoned town of Louisburg in the island of Cape Breton was taken in the most gallant manner by the English army under General Amherst, and Brigadier General Wolfe, the future conqueror of Canada. In 1758 Fort Frontenac near Kingston, and Fort Du Quesne near the Ohio river, were captured by the colonists.

6. The campaign of 1759 was opened with a plan of combined operations by sea and land. Canada was to be invaded at three different points by generals of high talent. The commander-in-chief, General Amherst, undertook the reduction of the forts at Crown Point and Ticonderoga. He was to cross Lake Champlain, and, proceeding along the Richelieu, was to reach the St. Lawrence, and join the other army before Quebec. The force, destined to proceed by sea to Quebec, was under the command of the heroic General Wolfe. General Prideaux, with another army and a large body of friendly Indians under Sir Wm. Johnson, was appointed to reduce the fort at Niagara.

7. Wolfe's army, amounting to about eight thousand men, was conveyed to the vicinity of Quebec by a fleet of vessels of war and transports, and landed in two divisions on the Island of Orleans on the 27th of June. The Marquis de Montcalm made vigorous preparations for defending Quebec. His armed force consisted of about thirteen thousand men, of whom six battalions were regulars, and the remainder well disciplined Canadian militia, with some cavalry and Indians. He ranged these forces from the river St. Charles to the Falls of Montmorency, with the view of opposing the landing of the British.

8. Wolfe first attempted the entrenchment of Montmorency, landing his troops under cover of the fire from the ships of war, but was gallantly repulsed by the French. In consequence of this repulse he sent dispatches to England, stating that he had doubts of being able to reduce Quebec during that campaign. His prospects indeed were not encouraging, the great stronghold kept up an incessant fire from its almost inaccessible position, bristling with guns, defended by a superior force, and inhabited by a hostile population. Above the city steep banks rendered landing almost impossible; below, the country for eight miles was embarrassed by two rivers, many redoubts and watchful Indians. A part of the fleet lay above the town, the remainder in the north channel, between the Island of Orleans and Montmorency.

9. Soon after this repulse, however, Wolfe roused his brave and vigorous spirit, called a council of war, and proposed, it is generally said at the instigation of his second in command, General Townsend, to gain the heights of Abraham behind and above the city, commanding the weakest part of the fortress. The council acceded to this daring proposal, and their heroic commander commenced his preparations, in the meanwhile making such active demonstrations against Montcalm's position that the French still believed it to be his main object.

10. On the 11th of September the greater part of the troops landed and marched up the south shore opposite Quebec, forded the river Etchemin, and embarked on board the men of war and transports which lay above the

town. On the 12th the ships of war sailed nine miles up the River to Cap Rouge. This feint deceived Montcalm, and he detached De Bourgainville, who with his army of reserve proceeded still farther up the River to prevent the English from landing. During the night the English troops dropped silently down the River with the current in boats, and at four o'clock in the morning began to land.

11. It is surprising how the troops contrived to land, as the French had posted centries along the shore to challenge boats and give the alarm. The first boat was questioned when Captain Donald M'Donald, one of Frazer's Highlanders, who was perfectly well acquainted with the French language and customs, answered to "*Qui vive?*", which is their challenge, the word "*La France.*" When the sentinel demanded "*A quel regiment?*", the captain replied "*De la Reine,*" which he knew by accident to be one of those commanded by De Bourgainville. The soldier took it for granted that it was an expected convoy, and, saying "*Passe,*" the boats proceeded without further question. One of the sentries more wary than the rest, running down the water's edge, called out, "*Pourquoi est-ce que vous ne parlez pas plus haut?*", to which the captain answered in asoft tone of voice, "*Tais-toi, nous serons entendus.*" Thus cautioned, the sentry retired, and the boats proceeded without further altercation and landed at the spot now celebrated as "Wolfe's Cove."

12. General Wolfe was one of the first on shore, and, on seeing the difficulty of ascending the precipice, observed familiarly to Captain M'Donald, "I do not believe there

is any possibility of getting up, but you must do your endeavour." Indeed the precipice here was so steep that there seemed no possibility of scaling it, but the Highlanders, grasping the bushes which grew on its face, ascended the woody precipice with courage and dexterity. They dislodged a small body of troops that defended a narrow pathway up the bank; and, a few more mounting, the general drew up the rest in order as they arrived. With great exertion they reached the summit, and in a short time Wolfe had his whole army drawn up in regular order on the plains above.

13. Montcalm, struck with this unexpected movement, concluded that, unless Wolfe could be driven from this position, Quebec was lost. Hoping probably that only a detachment had as yet reached it, he lost his usual prudence and forbearance, and, finding that his opponent had gained so much by hazarding all, he, with an infatuation for which it is difficult to account, resolved to meet the British army.

14. He crossed the St. Charles on the 13th, sallying forth from a strong fortress without field artillery, without even waiting the return of Bourgainville, who with two thousand men formed a corps of observation,—before he could concentrate his forces, advanced with haste and precipitation, and commenced a most gallant attack, when within about two hundred and fifty yards of the English line. The English moved forward regularly, firing steadily, until within thirty or forty yards of the French, when they gave a general volley which did great execution. The English had only a light cannon, which sailors had dragged

up the heights with ropes. The sabre therefore and the bayonet decided the day. The agile Scotch Highlanders with their stout claymores served the purposes of cavalry, and the steady fire of the English Fusiliers compensated in some degree for the want of artillery.

15. The heroism of Montcalm was as conspicuous as that of his illustrious opponent; both headed their men; both rushed with eagerness where the battle raged most fiercely. Often by their personal prowess and example did they change the fortune of the moment. Both were repeatedly wounded, but still fought on with enthusiasm. And at last both these gallant commanders fell mortally wounded, whilst advancing to the last deadly charge at the head of their respective columns.

16. Wolfe was first wounded in the wrist. He immediately wrapped a handkerchief round his arm, and, putting himself at the head of his grenadiers, led them on to the charge. He was then struck with a second ball, but still pressed on, when, just as the enemy were about to give way, he received a third ball in the breast and groin, and sank. When they raised him from the ground, he tried with a faint hand to clear the death-mist from his eyes. He could not see how the battle went, and was sinking to the earth when the cry "They run!" "They run!" arrested his fleeting spirit. "Who run?" asked the dying hero. "The French," replied his supporter, "they give way everywhere." "What!" said he, "do they run already? now God be praised,—I die happy;" and, so saying, the youthful victor breathed his last. Such was

the death of Wolfe at the early age of thirty-five, when but few men begin even to appear on the theatre of great events.

17. There is a small monument on the place of his death with the date and this inscription, "Here Wolfe died victorious." He was too precious to be left even on the field of his glory; England, jealous of his ashes, laid them with his father's in Greenwich, the town in which he was born. The news of these events reached Britain but forty-eight hours later than the first discouraging despatch, and spread universal joy for the great victory, and sorrow for its price. Throughout broad England were illuminations and songs of triumph; one country village was, however, silent and still, there Wolfe's widowed mother mourned her only son.

18. Wolfe is described as of a handsome person with fair complexion and sandy hair, possessing a countenance calm, resolute and beaming with intelligence. He was to have been married on his return from Quebec

* The monument here referred to having a few years ago become dilapidated, a new one was erected at the expense of the troops serving in Canada. It consists of a neat Corinthian pillar, surmounted by a Roman helmet and sword. It is protected by a substantial iron railing and bears the following inscription on the side facing the St. Lawrence. "This pillar was erected by the British Army in Canada, A. D. 1849, His Excellency Lieutenant General Sir Benjamin d'Urban, G. C. B., K. C. H., &c., Commander of the Forces, to replace that erected by Governor General Lord Aylmer, G. C. B., in 1832, which was broken and deposited beneath."

On the side facing the Plains of Abraham the monument bears the following simple inscription:

HERE DIED
WOLFE
VICTORIOUS.

to a most amiable and accomplished young lady. Six years after his death she became the wife of the last Duke of Bolton, and died in 1809. A very interesting and beautiful monument is erected to the memory of Wolfe in Westminster Abbey.

19. The chivalrous Montcalm also died nobly. When his wounds were pronounced mortal, he expressed his thankfulness that he should die before the surrender of Quebec. On being visited by the commander of the garrison, M. de Ramzay, and by the commandant De Roussellon, he entreated them to endeavour to secure the retreat of the army beyond Cap Rouge. On De Ramzay's pressing to receive his commands, he refused to interfere, and addressed himself to his religious duties, passing the rest of the night with the bishop and his confessor.

20. Before he died, he paid the victorious army this magnanimous compliment, "Since it has been my misfortune to be discomfited and mortally wounded, it is a great satisfaction to me to be vanquished by so brave and generous an enemy." Almost his last act was to write a letter, recommending the French prisoners to the generosity of their victors. He died at five o'clock on the morning of the 14th of September, and was buried in an excavation, made by the bursting of a shell within the precincts of the Ursuline convent.

21. The battle had scarcely closed before Bourgainville appeared in sight; but the fate of Canada was decided, the critical moment was gone. He retired to Pointe aux Trembles, where he encamped, and thence he retreated

to Three Rivers and Montreal. Had all the French forces been concentrated under Montcalm, it is doubtful if the heroism of the British troops could have secured the victory, so great was the valour displayed. On the 17th a flag of truce came out of the city, and on the 18th a capitulation was effected on honourable terms to the French, who were not made prisoners, but conveyed home to their own country. General Murray then assumed the command.

22. It is universally conceded that the Scotch Highlanders contributed greatly to the success of the enterprise. The French had formed the most frightful and absurd notions of the "Sauvages d'Ecosse," as they called them.

23. Well was Great Britain rewarded at Quebec for the wise measures she had adopted of employing the Highland clans. They were composed of some of the bravest and noblest of men. They lay under the imputation of disloyalty from having taken part with Charles Stuart in the rebellion of 1745; but gladly entered into the British service, and embraced the opportunity of proving their attachment to the more moderate and grateful house of Brunswick. The command of these forces was given to officers chosen from amongst the most esteemed Scottish families; a hardy and intrepid race of men was thus drawn into the army, who served the crown with fidelity, fought with valour, and conquered for England in every part of the World.

24. The battalion of Highlanders at Quebec was commanded by the Hon. Simon Fraser, son of that Lord Lovat who was beheaded for high treason. Eight hundred

of the men belonged to his own estate, and six hundred and sixty were added by the gentlemen of the country around; so that the battalion, commanded by "the Master of Lovat," consisted of fourteen hundred and sixty men. They formed a splendid body, wore the full Highland costume, winter and summer, even in this rigorous climate; their arms were musket and broad-sword, whilst many wore the dirk. In all their movements they were attended by their chaplain, the Rev. Robert Macpherson. The temperance and moderation of their behaviour soon overcame prejudice, and produced everywhere a favourable impression as to "the sons of the mountain."

25. The capture of Quebec may be said to have decided the fate of the French dominion in Canada. In a short time General Amherst with his large force reduced the strong forts of Ticonderoga and Crown Point; and General Prideaux, aided by Sir William Johnson and his Indians, took Niagara.

26. We have dwelt on this memorable period of our history at more length than usual, because we wish every child in Canada to know how our dominion here was won, and why it is that the flag of "dear old England" now floats over the walls of Quebec.

Questions on Part II.—Chapter 7.

What are the divisions of Chapter VII ?

I.—1. What is said of the death of the Marquis de Vaudreuil ? By whom was he succeeded ? What is said of his administration ?

2. How long did Beauharnois continue in power ? What did he plan ? What forts did he erect, and for what purpose ?

3. Give an account of the reduction of Cape Breton. What is said of the battle of Fontenoy? And what did the Canadians attempt?
4. For what purpose were commissioners appointed? What is said of the Canadian government? Give an account of their proceedings. What effect had this upon the Indians?
5. What royal edict was passed? What effect had this edict? What change took place in the fur trade? What was opened at Montreal?

II.—1. Who succeeded Beauharnois? By whom was l'e Galissoniere followed?

III.—1. What system did Du Quesne carry on? Where did he erect a fort?
2. What was done by the British? What remarkable man commanded the garrison? By whom was he met? What orders did M. de Jumonville issue? How was this mandate answered? What was the result?
3. What general convention was held? What was proposed? Of what was this eventually the basis?
4. For what was England now preparing? What it said of the French fleet? What is said of an English fleet?

IV.—1. By whom was Du Quesne succeeded? How did his administration open? What did Braddock neglect? What ensued? What was the fate of Braddock, and how was the remainder of the army saved?
2. How did these troops distinguish themselves? Whither did the French retreat?
3. What is said of this success? What effect had these battles? What is said of Washington?
4. Who was now sent out to Canada with troops? What did he obtain? Give an account of the barbarous murder perpetrated at Fort Edward. What effect did this produce?
5. Where were the British troops successful? What forts were captured?
6. How was the campaign of 1759 opened? How was Canada to be invaded? What did General Amherst undertake? How was he then to proceed? By whom was the force destined for Quebec commanded? What was the destination of General Prideaux?
7. What is said of Wolfe's army? What is said of the preparations made by Montcalm? Describe his force. Where did he range them?
8. Where did Wolfe make his first attempt, and with what result? What did he send to England? Give an account of his prospects. What appeared above the city? What below? Where did the fleet lie?

9. What is said of Wolfe? What proposal was made? Was it acceded to? How did he act meanwhile?
10. On what side of the St. Lawrence did the troops land? What was done on the 12th? Did this succeed? How did the troops descend the River?
11. What is surprising in this event? Give an account of Captain M'Donald's "ruse de guerre." What did the soldier think was passing? What question did one of the sentries ask? Repeat the answer. Where did the boats land?
12. What remark did Wolfe make? What is said of the precipice? How was it overcome? Whom did they dislodge? How did the general act? What had he the pleasure to behold?
13. What was Montcalm's conclusion? Give an account of his proceedings.
14. What error did he commit? Describe the hasty but gallant attack. How did the English advance? What artillery did they possess? How was the day decided? What is said of the Highlanders? What is said of Montcalm and Wolfe? What is said of their prowess? What is said of their wounds? What is said of their death?
16. Where was Wolfe first wounded? Where did he receive the fatal blow? What effort did he make? Repeat his last conversation and dying words. What is said of Wolfe?
17. What is placed on the spot where he died? Where was he buried? How was the news received in Britain? What rejoicing took place? Why was one country village delicately left in quietude?
18. Describe his person. Give an account of his intended marriage. Whom did she marry, and when did she die? Where is his monument erected.
19. What is said of Montcalm? Give an instance of his humanity for his men. How did he pass the night preceding his death?
20. Repeat the compliment paid to the British troops by Montcalm. Mention one of his last acts. When did he die? Where was he buried?
21. What is said of Canada? Whither did Bourgainville retire? What is said of the French forces? What was effected on the 18th? On what terms? Who then assumed the command?
22. What is said of the Scotch Highlanders? What did they believe?
23. What is said of Great Britain? Of whom were the clans

composed? Why were they thought disloyal? What is said of them? To whom was the command of the clans given? What was the consequence?

24. Who commanded the battalion of Highlanders at Quebec? Of how many men did it consist? Describe their dress. Describe their arms. What impression did they produce?
25. What may be said of the capture of Quebec? What success had Generals Amherst and Prideaux?
26. Why has this period in our history been enlarged upon?

PART III.

CANADA UNDER THE BRITISH.

COLONIAL HISTORY EXTENDING FROM THE CONQUEST OF QUEBEC, 1759, TO THE UNION OF THE PROVINCES OF UPPER AND LOWER CANADA, 1840, A PERIOD OF EIGHTY-ONE YEARS.

CHAPTER I.

DIVISIONS.

I. History from the Conquest of Quebec, 1759, *to the Treaty of Paris*, 1763.—*II. From the Treaty of Paris*, 1763, *to the Declaration of Independence of the United States*, 1774.—*III. From the Declaration of Independence*, 1774, *to the Declaration of War*, 1812.

I. GENERAL HISTORY FROM THE CONQUEST OF QUEBEC, 1759, TO THE TREATY OF PARIS, 1763.—1. At the time when Canada came into the possession of the British, the population amounted to 65,000 persons. They

consisted chiefly of cultivators. a frugal, industrious and moral race, and a *noblesse* who, though poor, were very much respected. There was besides a considerable body of Indians, who were converted to the Roman Catholic faith.

2. The terms in favour of the French residents were faithfully and even liberally fulfilled by the British government. Civil and religious liberty was granted to the Canadians, and great forbearance and generosity were displayed by the captors to the conquered. Unfortunately, however, all offices were confined to British subjects. These then consisted of military men and traders, many of whom were ill fitted for so important a station. They showed too often a bigoted spirit and a contemptuous disposition towards the old inhabitants, including the *noblesse*.

3. General Murray, who had succeeded to the command, notwithstanding this feeling on the part of the British officials strenuously protected the Canadians without regard to the complaints made against him to the ministry at Home; and by this impartial conduct gained their confidence. For some time after the capitulation the people were governed by military tribunals. but, soon after the conclusion of the peace, which left to France no trace of power in North America, new courts of civil and criminal jurisdiction were established, in which the laws of England were introduced.

4. The Canadians were so gratified with the change which they experienced in coming under the British rule

that, when George II. died towards the end of the year 1760, all the French in Canada of any distinction went into mourning. Though the conquest of Canada was accomplished during his reign, yet so uncertain is life that he only lived to hear of this great accession to his empire. In the midst of the hearty rejoicings of the people he was suddenly seized with illness, and expired in the 77th year of his age.

5. His Majesty George III. had the gratification of receiving the homage of his new subjects. The Chevalier Chaussegros de Lery and his lady were the first of his Canadian subjects that had the honour of being presented at court. The young and gallant monarch, on receiving Madame de Lery, who was a very beautiful woman, observed to her, "If all the ladies of Canada are as handsome as yourself, I have indeed made a conquest."

6. In the month of April the French army, which had been collected in the neighbourhood of Montreal under the command of the Chevalier de Levi, marched towards Quebec for the purpose of attacking and regaining it. A battle was fought in the vicinity on the 27th, and after a furious contest for two hours General Murray, being overpowered by numbers, was obliged to return to the city with the loss of one thousand men. If this general was guilty of any rashne s in leaving his fortifi d position, he amply atoned for it by the vigour with which he placed Quebec in a state of defence, and held out against all opponents until the 15th May, when a fleet with troops under Admiral Swanton arrived just in time to save the

city, and compelled De Levi to retire with precipitation to Montreal.

7. Vaudreuil, the governor of Montreal, finding the danger imminent, determined to take his last stand on behalf of French dominion in this city, and for this purpose he called in all his detachments, thus concentrating his remaining strength. He moreover enlarged the fortifications for the defence of the town, and converted sloops into armed vessels.

8. In the meantime General Murray, with as many troops as could be spared from Quebec, advanced towards the point of attack. General Amherst, with the army from Oswego, approached in an opposite direction, both armies taking post near the city in one day. Colonel Haviland with a strong detachment lay on the south shore of the St. Lawrence opposite to Montreal. Thus De Vaudreuil found himself completely surrounded and almost compelled to surrender.

9. On the 8th of September he signed the capitulation, by which Montreal and the whole of Canada were transferred to British dominion. A few days afterwards the French troops were sent down to Quebec, and thence to France, not to serve again during the war. Thus was the last decisive act in the conquest of Canada performed without firing a gun or the loss of a single life.

10. Vaudreuil obtained the most liberal stipulations for the good treatment of the people he had previously commanded, particularly for the free exercise of the Roman Catholic faith, and the preservation of the property belong-

ing to the religious communities. He even demanded that the bishop should continue to be appointed by the French monarch; but this of course was refused. The possession of Canada, as well as of all the adjoining countries, was confirmed to Britain by the treaty of Paris, signed on the 10th of May, 1763.

11. While the negociations, which issued in this treaty, were pending, it seems that the murmurs of the French people, who did not like the idea of relinquishing Canada, reached the throne. The king immediately sent for his sagacious minister, the Duc de Choiseul, to remonstrate with him on the subject. That wily statesman advised the monarch to allow England to retain peaceable possession of Canada. He remarked that, if the English had as much wisdom as they ought to have, they would almost pay the French a subsidy to retain it; and he prophesied that the New England States, from the deep-rooted abhorrence which they entertained towards monarchical government, would assert their independence as soon as a foreign enemy was removed from their neighbourhood. This prediction was too soon verified in the conduct of the British colonists in North America.

II. From the Treaty of Paris, 1763, to the Declaration of Independence by the United States of America, 1774.—1. The population from the time of the conquest increased rapidly by the influx of British settlers. Trade with England was encouraged, and the capabilities of the country were more extensively explored; and the Canadians now indeed began to enjoy

a liberty which they had never before tasted, and a degree of prosperity which made them almost forget the shock they had sustained by the conduct of M. Bigot, the financier of the king of France, who had by his peculation almost ruined the mercantile portion of the colonists.

2. This intendant, as he was called, had the entire management of the finances of the colony in his hands, and took advantage of a paper currency, which had been faithfully redeemed for upwards of thirty years, and enjoyed unlimited credit to conceal his speculations. This paper currency had been given as payment for the expenses of the civil and military establishments, and passed freely, so that everything required by the French government could be procured with it. Suddenly, however, while the English were capturing the country by force of arms, the French monarch, as if resolved of destroying the commerce and prospects of his subjects, refused to pay the bills of exchange passed by Bigot. By this act he involved in ruin not only all who possessed these bills but all who possessed any paper currency. This amounted at the period to the immense sum of £4,000,000 sterling. The only compensation received for this large sum was four per cent. on the original value.

3. During this year Montreal suffered from a dreadful fire, which broke out in the house of one Livingston, and was occasioned by hot ashes being carried into the garret to make soap. The want of engines, and the prevalence of a very high wind, were favourable to the spreading of the conflagration, which was only stopped at last by pulling down a part of the Hopital des Sœurs in Notre

Dame Street. One hundred and eight houses were destroyed, and two hundred and fifteen families reduced to the greatest distress. This was in the Lower Town; but, three years afterwards, another fire broke out in the Upper or Western part of the town, which raged with incredible fury, until it had consumed ninety houses, two churches and a large charity-school. Nothing could exceed the kindness displayed towards the sufferers; a considerable sum was raised in England, and sent to their relief, but many were reduced to great poverty notwithstanding all the efforts made to aid them. The populatiou of Montreal was at this time about seven thousand.

4. In order to conciliate the Canadians, the English law, which had at first been introduced amongst them, was changed for the "*Coutume de Paris*," the ancient system to which they had been so long accustomed. The French language was also directed to be used in the law courts, and other changes were made, which could not fail to be gratifying to the Canadian people.

5. The momentous period, when the English colonists threw off their allegiance to the Mother country rather than submit to be taxed without being represented in the Imperial Senate, now approached. The French Canadians, however, though pressingly invited to assist, refused. They were aware of the blessings they enjoyed under the British government, and willingly submitted even to the Stamp Act, which caused so great a revolt amongst their neighbours.

III. FROM THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE,

1774, TO THE DECLARATION OF WAR, 1812.—1. The first Congress of what is now called "The United States" met in Philadelphia on the 5th of September, 1774. It is remarkable that one of their first objects after obtaining their own independence was to attempt to seize on the country they had assisted England to conquer. It is a singular fact that the money, which it was endeavoured to levy upon the New Englanders and their fellow-colonists, and which in a great measure caused the rupture, was for the express purpose of defraying the great expenses incurred by England in the capture of Canada.

2. Having resolved to invade Canada, the Americans entered it in the fall of 1775 in two directions, by Lake Champlain and by the sources of the Kennebec River. The first division under General Montgomery was very successful. After obtaining possession of Ticonderoga, Crown Point and St. Johns, he advanced towards Montreal. His force was very considerable, while there were but few British soldiers in Canada. General Carleton, who succeeded General Murray in the military command, had been repulsed at Longuiel; so that Montgomery had only to take possession of the city, which he did on the 19th of November. The naval force in the River and all the military stores and provisions were surrendered into his hands, and General Prescott with the volunteers and soldiers became prisoners of war. Finding plenty of woollen cloth in the city, General Montgomery took the opportunity of new-clothing his troops, who had suffered much from the severity of the weather.

3. The second division of the American army under General Arnold reached the St. Lawrence on the 9th of November. They had traversed with dreadful fatigue the forests and swamps in the District of Maine, and arrived at Point Levi, opposite Quebec, worn-out and dispirited. Quebec was at this time defenceless: and, had General Arnold been able to cross the River, that capital, and with it the territory of Canada, must have passed into the hands of the Americans. Fortunately all the shipping had been removed to the other side, and it was not until the 14th that he was able to cross over. He landed five hundred men at Wolfe's Cove, and waited near that place in the hope of being joined by Montgomery from Montreal.

4. General Carleton, the British Governor, was at this time occupied with his troops near Montreal in endeavouring to repulse Montgomery. The latter wished to effect a junction with General Arnold, that they might unitedly attack the fortress. Perceiving that the safety of the country depended upon the possession of Quebec, Carleton effected a masterly movement to reach that place. In this he was assisted by Captain Bouchette, of the Royal Navy, grand-father of the present Deputy Surveyor General of Canada, Joseph Bouchette, Esq., who conveyed him through the American forces by night in a canoe with muffled paddles. He arrived at the Citadel of Quebec on the 19th, whilst the Americans thought him busily engaged with Montgomery near Montreal.

5. General Carleton's arrival at Quebec was hailed

with great joy by the Canadians, who vied with the oldest British soldiers in preparing for defence. The force under his command amounted to only eighteen hundred men. Not more than three hundred and fifty were regulars, of whom two hundred and thirty were Fraser's Highlanders, who had settled in the country, and were re-embodied under Colonel McLean. The remainder were four hundred and fifty seamen, and a gallant band composed of Canadian militia and artificers.

6. The American generals had now effected a junction of their forces, and summoned the fortress to surrender. This was at once rejected. After pushing the siege during the month of December without any prospect of success, Montgomery determined upon making a night-attack. This intention soon became known to General Carleton, who made every preparation to defeat the enemy. The governor, with the officers and gentlemen off duty, took up their quarters for several days at the Recollet Convent, where they slept in their clothes.

7. During this month's siege the American rifle-men kept up an unintermitting fire upon the sentinels, and threw from forty to fifty shells every night into the city. The inhabitants became so accustomed to the occurrences of a siege that they ceased to regard them with alarm, all joining cheerfully in bearing arms and performing the duty of soldiers.

8. Two strong parties were formed on 31st December, one under Montgomery, the other under Arnold, whose local knowledge of Quebec was accurate. They were to

advance from opposite sides and meet at the foot of Mountain Street, then force Prescott gate and reach the Upper Town.

9. The besiegers approached the City with the most careful silence, aided by the raging of a furious storm. Advancing by the road which winds round the face of the rock, the army was crowded into the narrow pass which led to the gate. Notwithstanding every precaution the confused noise of the approaching troops rose above the conflict of the elements, and struck the watchful ear of the outer sentinel, who, receiving no answer to his challenge, roused the British guard.

10. The party, who defended the battery, consisted of Canadian militia, with nine British seamen to work the guns. They kept a close watch, and, as soon as the day broke, discovered the troops marching in the snow. Orders were given to make no movement; and the Americans, having halted at the distance of fifty yards, sent forward an officer to reconnoitre. On his return the troops marched forward with a quickness and precision deserving the highest praise. The English then opened a tremendous fire from the artillery which commanded the path; the groans which succeeded plainly revealed the enemy; and it was not until every sound in answer to their fire had died away that they ceased their cannonade.

11. The enemy having retired, thirteen bodies were found in the snow. Montgomery's orderly serjeant, desperately wounded, but yet alive, was found and brought into the guard-room. On being asked if the General

himself had been killed, he evaded the question by replying that he had not seen him for some time. This faithful serjeant died in about an hour afterwards. It was not ascertained that the American General had been killed until General Carleton, anxious to learn the truth, sent to enquire if any of the prisoners would identify the body. An officer consenting accompanied the aid-de-camp to the "*Près de Ville*" guard, and pointed out the body, pronouncing over it a glowing eulogium on Montgomery's bravery. His two aids-de-camp were also recognised among the slain.

12. This brave man had fought by the side of Wolfe on the Plains of Abraham; but, marrying an American lady, the daughter of Judge Livingston, he imbibed the politics of his father-in-law's family, and joined the cause of the colonists against the Mother Country. The excellence of his qualities and disposition procured him an uncommon share of private affection and esteem. After his death the Continental Congress ordered a magnificent cenotaph to be erected to his memory in St. Paul's Church, New York. Hither his remains were removed in 1818 by the desire of his widow, and with the permission of the then British Governor, Sir John Sherbrooke.

13. In the meantime Arnold, who had been repulsed at the opposite side of the town, took the command, and attempted still to maintain his ground; but the dispirited state of his men rendered him unable to keep up more than an imperfect blockade at the distance of three miles, which he at last abandoned. In the whole attack upon Quebec the

Americans lost about one hundred killed and wounded, and six officers of Arnold's division, inclusive of the loss at *Près de Ville*. The British had one officer and seventeen men killed and wounded. The number of those who surrendered was four hundred and twenty-six.

14. Quebec has been five times assaulted. First, in 1629, when, in the infancy of the colony, it fell into the hands of the English. Secondly, in 1690, after its natural capabilities for defence had been improved, when it successfully resisted the attack of Sir William Phipps. Thirdly, in 1759, when, after the battle of the Plains of Abraham, it was once more won for England by Wolfe. Fourthly, in 1760, when, having been threatened during the winter, it was unsuccessfully besieged by De Levi, and lastly, in 1775, when, after it had sustained an unsuccessful siege and blockade of six months, General Arnold was obliged to abandon his camp in despair.

15. In the month of May reinforcements having arrived from Britain under General Burgoyne, the Canadians were enabled to drive the Americans from the Province. Notwithstanding this in 1777 General Burgoyne and a great number of British troops were obliged to surrender as prisoners of war to General Gates and the Republican Army at a village near Saratoga. The disaster had an important bearing upon the events of that period.

16. The army of the ill-fated Burgoyne was the best equipped and most effective that had entered the field during the contest. High hopes were entertained of its success; but the insurmountable difficulties of the country,

the inclement weather and the energy and skill of the opponents were its ruin. Two successive actions—the first a victory—the second, a defeat—hastened the fate of this army, which had been harassed by fatigue and imperfectly supplied. Embarrassed by heavy rains and deep roads as well as by the number of the wounded, it retreated for three days, and on the 18th of September took up its final stand above the Fishkill River. To retreat farther was impracticable. The Americans swarmed on every side in overwhelming numbers; supplies failed; water could be got only at the price of blood, for the river was guarded by the deadly rifle; whilst every part of the camp was exposed to the enemy's cannon and the marksman's aim. There was no place of safety; as long as they lasted, they were shot down like deer. For six days the spirit of English chivalry would not bow; at length hunger and toil, the deadly sickness and the hopeless struggle could no longer be borne, and they yielded.

17. This long war terminated in 1783 by the independence of all the colonies that had united against Britain. The issue, unfavourable or at least mortifying to the Mother Country, was attended with considerable advantage to Canada. This arose from a large body of Loyalists, who expatriated themselves from the United States and took refuge in her territories. They received liberal grants of land, and laid the foundation of that prosperity which has since so eminently distinguished Canada West.

18. His late Majesty, William the IV., visited Canada

in 1787. He then commanded the Pegasus, of eighty-four guns. He landed at Quebec on the 14th of August, and on the 18th of September made his entrance into Montreal. He was received and entertained with all the honours due to his illustrious rank. Having landed and passed sometime at Sorel on his return, he sanctioned the change of name to his own—William Henry; by either of which appellations it is now known.

19. Lord Dorchester, having assumed the government in 1787, brought forward, a few years afterwards, a plan of government better suited to existing circumstances, and intended as nearly as possible to resemble the form of the British Constitution. By this act the Colony was divided into the two Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada, and a Legislature was established in each. In pursuance of this act the first Provincial Parliament of Lower Canada met at Quebec on the 17th of December, 1792.

20. General Prescott was appointed Governor in this year, and several Legislative Acts passed for the improvement of the Province. It was found, however, that the Land Granting Department had managed to grant to each other large and valuable tracts of the Crown Lands to the injury of vast numbers of settlers and emigrants.

21. The affairs of the Province at this period were entrusted to Sir Robert S. Milnes, as Lieutenant Governor. In 1803 a decision of the Chief Justice at Montreal declared slavery inconsistent with the laws of the country, and a few individuals in that condition received a

grant of freedom. Sir James H. Craig was appointed Governor General in 1807. The Province still continued to enjoy peace, and its trade flourished and increased rapidly. Differences, however, unfortunately arose between the Governor and the House of Assembly.

22. In 1810 the resolutions of the House expelling the Judges, the pledge of the House to pay the civil list, and the expulsion of Judge Sewell by vote led to the dissolution of Parliament. This, with the suppression of a French paper, called "*Le Canadien*," the seizure of its press and the imprisonment of its printer and six others, gave great offence. Some very imaginative persons gave to this period the name of the "reign of terror."

23. Sir George Prevost succeeded to the administration of Canada, 1811, as Governor General, and the following year the United States declared war against Great Britain.

Questions on Part III.—Chapter 1.

What are the divisions of this Chapter?

I—1. What number of inhabitants had Canada at the time of the conquest? Describe them. What is said of the Indians?

2. What is said of the British government? What was granted to the Canadians? What cause of complaint was still left? Of whom did these consist? What spirit did these officers show?

3. How did General Murray act? In what manner were the people governed? What new courts were instituted?

4. How did the Canadians evince their regard for the British? What is said of George the II.? What is said of his death?

5. Who first received the homage of the Canadians? Who first visited the court of George the III.? What speech was made by the king to Madame de L'ry?

6. What is said of De Levi? Give an account of the battle. What is said of General Murray? What then arrived?
7. What course did Vaudreuil take? Give an account of the arrangements.
8. Who advanced from Quebec? From what direction did General Amherst approach? Where was Colonel Haviland stationed? In what situation did Vaudreuil find himself?
9. What is said of this capitulation? Whither were the French troops sent? In what manner was this performed?
10. What stipulations did Vaudreuil exact? What did he demand? Was this granted? When was this conquest confirmed?
11. What occurred in France? For whom did Louis send? What did Choiseul advise? What remark did he make? What did he prophesy? Was this prediction verified?

II.—1. What followed the conquest of Canada by the British? What did the Canadians begin to enjoy? What is said of M. Bigot?
2. What is said of the finances? Of what did he take advantage? For what purpose had this paper been passed? Of what was the French monarch guilty? Who were involved in ruin by this act? To what sum did this currency amount? What compensation was received?
3. What calmity desolated Montreal? What caused it to spread, and how was it stopped? Relate the particulars of the second fire. What relief was afforded to the sufferers? What was the population of Montreal at this period?
4. What change in the law was introduced at this time? What other changes?
5. What momentous period now approached? What was the conduct of the French Canadians? To what act did they submit?

III.—1. When did the first Congress meet? What was one of their first objects? For what purpose was the money raised which caused the rupture?
2. In what quarters did the Americans invade Canada? What was the success of the first division? Was his force considerable? What is said of General Carleton? When did Montgomery enter Montreal? What was surrendered to him? What did he find in the city, and to what use did he apply it?
3. When did the second division reach the St Lawrence? Describe their sufferings. In what state was Quebec at this time? What must have been the result if Arnold had crossed the River? Whither had the shipping been removed?

Where did he land his men, and for whom did he wait ?

4. Where was General Carleton ? What was the object of Montgomery ? What movement did Carleton effect ? By whose assistance ? How was this accomplished ? When did he arrive ?
5. How was his arrival hailed ? What amount of force did he possess ? What amount of regulars ? What amount of sailors and militia ?
6. What is said of the American generals ? What was the reply ? What was the determination of Montgomery ? Did this intention transpire ? What precaution was taken ?
7. Give an account of the siege. What is said of the inhabitants ?
8. What took place on the 31st Dec. ? What was the plan of attack ?
9. Describe their approach. Into what was the army crowded ? What is said of the noise of the troops ?
10. Who defended the battery ? What did they discover ? What orders were given ? What is said of the troops ? What was then done by the English ? What succeeded ?
11. How many bodies were found ? Who was brought into the guard-room ? What is said of him ? How did General Carleton try to ascertain the fact ? Who recognized the corpse of Montgomery ? Who besides were found amongst the dead ?
12. How came General Montgomery to embrace the American cause ? What is said of him ? Where is his monument erected ? When was his body removed to New York ?
13. Who took the command ? What is said of Arnold ? What was the loss of the Americans ? What was the loss of the British ?
14. How many times has Quebec been assailed ? First, Secondly, Thirdly, Fourthly, Lastly, with what result ?
15. What were the Canadians enabled to do in 1776 ? What disaster befel the British in 1776 ? What is said of this ?
16. In what condition was the army of Burgoyne ? What caused its ruin ? What is said of the two actions ? Describe its condition. What is said of the Americans ? What of the situation of the army ? How long did they resist ?
17. When was the peace with the United States settled ? What is said of the issue ? How did this arise ? How were they rewarded ?
18. When did his late Majesty visit Canada ? Where did he land, and to what place did he proceed ? How was he received ? What occurred on his return ?

19. What new plan of government was now adopted? How was the colony divided? When did the first Parliament meet?
20. What is said of General Prescott? What is said of the Land Granting Department?
21. To whom were the affairs of the Province now entrusted? What decision was made with regard to slavery? Who was sent out in 1807? Did the Province flourish? What difference arose?
22. What led to the dissolution of Parliament? What gave great offence? What name was given to this period?
23. Who succeeded to the administration? When did the United States declare war against Great Britain?

CHAPTER II.

DIVISIONS.

I. General History, from the Declaration of War, 1812, *to the Peace of* 1814 *and* 1815.—*II. From the Treaty of Peace,* 1815, *to the Commencement of Disturbances,* 1832.—*III. From the Commencement of Disturbances,* 1832, *to the End of the Insurrection of* 1838.

I. GENERAL HISTORY FROM THE DECLARATION OF WAR, 1812, TO THE TREATY OF PEACE, 1815.—1. The Americans, having declared war against England, determined to invade Canada, where they supposed the mass of the people would receive them with open arms. Far from this being the case, as soon as it was known that war was proclaimed, the Canadians rose with a noble spirit in defence of their country. Four battalions of Militia were instantly raised, and the Canadian Voltigeurs were organized and equipped in the short space of six weeks by

the liberality of the young Canadian gentry, from among whom they were gallantly officered. The new Governor, Sir George Prevost, assembled the Legislature; Government paper, bearing interest, and payable in Bills of Exchange on England, was substituted for money, to prevent the specie from going to the United States. The Citadel of Quebec was guarded by inhabitants of the town, proud of the duty and of the confidence reposed in them. Every description of force was put into activity; and our old friends, the Indians, now a very different race from those of whom you have read in the early wars, came from their forest homes, to arm in defence of their country.

2. The same feeling was manifested in Upper Canada. This portion of the country is peopled with British emigrants, and the important body of settlers from the United States, of which we have already spoken, and which is generally known in Canada by the name of the Loyalists or United Empire Loyalists. The government of this Province was entrusted to General Brock, a straightforward politician, and an able, active and spirited soldier.

3. In July the American General Hull with a force of twenty-five hundred men crossed over from Detroit, and entered the Western District, where he issued a proclamation inviting the inhabitants to join his standard. At this time the British force on the frontier was nearly nominal, and could offer little resistance. As soon as General Brock heard of this invasion, he prorogued the Parliament then sitting at Toronto, and proceeded westward. He arrived on the 12th of August at Amherstburg, where he muster-

ed about three hundred and thirty regulars, and four hundred militia and six hundred Indians. Hull, whose force, weakened by sickness and sending away two detachments, is said by this time not to have exceeded eight hundred effective men, retreated across the River, withdrawing the cannon prepared for the siege of Amherstburg, and shut himself up in Detroit. General Brock, instantly crossing over, advanced upon the fort and prepared for an immediate assault. A white flag, however, appeared from the walls, and a capitulation was signed, by which the whole American force, including the detachments, were made prisoners and sent to Montreal. Loud and just complaints were made by the Americans against the conduct of Hull, who was afterwards tried and condemned to be shot, but was spared on account of his age and former services.

4. A few months after the surrender of Hull the Americans collected a large force on the Niagara frontier. On the 13th of October this force crossed over into Upper Canada at Queenston, and overpowered the detachment stationed there. General Brock was then at Fort George, lower down the River; but such was his ardour that without waiting to collect his troops he immediately hastened to the spot. Putting himself at the head of a small party, which was still resisting the enemy, he fell fighting valiantly near the spot on which the monument to his memory was afterwards erected. For some time the Americans had possession of the heights; but they were dislodged, and the greater part made prisoners by General Sheaffe, who succeeded to the command.

5. A temporary truce ensued in this quarter for some time. It was interrupted by a ridiculous gasconade and imprudent attempt at invasion on the 20th and 28th of November near Fort Erie by the American General Smythe. An equally absurd attempt was made at the same time by the British Naval Force on Lake Ontario against Sackett's Harbour, the chief American seaport. The severity of the season caused a suspension of hostilities. An attack, however, was made on Ogdensburg by Captnin M'Donell, who, crossing the St. Lawrence on the ice, drove out the garrison, and obtained possession of eleven pieces of cannon and a considerable quantity of stores. The only important advantage gained during the winter was by General Proctor, who on the 22nd January took a large number of prisoners with their General Wilkinson near Detroit.

6. As soon as the ice disappeared from Lake Ontario, the Americans came out of Sackett's Harbour with a superior naval force. The plan of this campaign was limited to the conquest of Upper Canada, which, as it was defended by only twenty-one hundred regular troops, was considered almost certain. On the 27th of April they landed at and took possession of York (Toronto), then the capital of Upper Canada, destroyed the fort and public buildings, and forced General Sheaffe to retire towards Kingston.

7. In less than a month afterwards they drove General Vincent from Fort George at the entrance of the Niagara river, then considered the chief military position in the

Province. They soon obtained possession of the whole Niagara Frontier, then containing a very large proportion of the population of Upper Canada, General Vincent was obliged to retire to Burlington Heights near the western extremity of Lake Ontario. The Americans had advanced as far as Stony Creek with the intention of dislodging them, when Lieutenant Colonel Harvey, now Sir John Harvey, conceived and executed a plan of surprising them in the night. Before day he entered their camp, consisting of three thousand men, with only seven hundred and four soldiers, killed and wounded a great number, and captured two generals and one hundred and twenty prisoners. This affair so disconcerted the Americans that they returned hastily to Fort George, leaving the communication with part of Niagara Frontier open to the British, and perhaps eventually saving the whole of the Province.

8. On the 23rd of June two American armed vessels were gallantly captured by the British troops at Isle-aux-Noix in Lake Champlain, and in July the barracks at Blackrock and Plattsburg were destroyed. An attack on Sackett's Harbour, however, by Sir George Prevost, on which great hopes were formed, completely failed. On the 10th of September Commodore Perry captured the whole British Naval Force on Lake Erie.

9. To add to this series of disasters, General Proctor was defeated near Detroit by General Harrison. This General brought with him a body of combatants hitherto unknown in warfare,, the Kentucky mounted riflemen, accustomed to ride through the woods, and using their

weapons with astonishing skill. Receiving the fire of the British, they galloped forward amongst them, and in a few minutes spread a general confusion through the ranks. The Indians sustained the loss of their chief Tecumseh, one of the bravest of the brave, and equally distinguished by policy and eloquence. The main object of his life had been to unite his followers in a grand confederacy against the Americans. In his enmity to them he had warmly attached himself to the British, and aided them in successive victories. General Proctor was obliged to retreat to Burlington Heights, where he could only rally two hundred men, with whom he joined the Niagara army.

10. In the fall of the year the American Forces were assembled on Lakes Ontario and Champlain with the intention of making a combined attack on Montreal, the success of which would doubtless have placed the whole of the Upper Province in their hands. On the 21st of October General Hampton entered Lower Canada from Lake Champlain with an army of from six to seven thousand men. On the 26th he came to Colonel De Salaberry's position on the Chateauguay river, where he met with a noble resistance from the little detachment that formed the advance of the British army. It was almost entirely composed of natives of Lower Canada, and its numbers have been variously estimated.

11. This brave officer was himself a Canadian, belonging to one of the oldest and most distinguished families, and had served with the British army in various parts of the World. To great activity and personal courage he

united military science and experience, and possessed the entire confidence of his troops. He availed himself of every advantage which the thickly wooded country afforded, and poured in a deadly fire. The example, which the gallant Colonel thus set, was nobly followed by the men, every one of whom made sure of his object. The loss of the Americans was considerable, whilst Colonel de Salaberry had only two men killed and sixteen wounded. General Hampton returned to Plattsburg, where his army dwindled away by sickness and desertion.

12. Meantime the large expedition under General Wilkinson, having crossed Lake Ontario, entered the River St. Lawrence, and passed the British fort of Prescott on the night of the 6th of November. It was a beautiful moonlight night, and he might have reached the Island of Montreal the next day, had he continued his route without interruption. Fortunately, however, he thought proper to land portions of his troops at different places on the St. Lawrence in quest of imaginary obstacles to his passage. These unnecessary delays gave time to Sir George Prevost to hear of his coming, and to call out the Militia, who were assembling from every part of the country, and enabled the detachments also from the garrisons of Kingston and Prescott to overtake him.

12. Near Cornwall Wilkinson received despatches from Hampton, declining the expected co-operation with him. He found too that the population was hostile to the States, and attached to the British government. He resolved to give up his attack upon Montreal, and retire

to winter quarters. The American General Boyd with the elite of the army marched, at this time too, against the British General Morrison, who commanded the detachments from Kingston and Prescott, amounting to only eight hundred men. Great fears were entertained of the junction of the forces of Boyd and Wilkinson. This, however, was prevented; and Boyd's army was beaten at Chrysler's Farm above Cornwall, and forced to retire to their boats. They crossed the Salmon river, from which they ultimately retired to Plattsburg on Lake Champlain.

14. In the month of December the Americans, finding that the British were prepared to act on the offensive, burnt the town of Newark (now Niagara), leaving the inhabitants ruined and houseless in the midst of winter. On the advance of General Murray, General M'Clure retired, and the American Fort Niagara was taken by surprise, with four hundred prisoners, and a large quantity of arms and stores. On the 30th the British retaliated the burning of Niagara by destroying Blackrock and Buffalo. The winter put an end for a time to this border warfare, so annoying to both countries, and frequently more disastrous in its consequences than regular contests.

15. Operations were commenced early in the spring of 1814. An American army, commanded by General Wilkinson, and amounting to upwards of three thousand men, entered Lower Canada on the western shore of Lake Champlain. They attacked and completely invested Lacolle Mill, which was defended by Major Hand-

cock of the 13th regiment and about one hundred and eighty men. They were vigorously repulsed from this little fortress and driven back to the United States.

16. Early in the season Sir James Yeo arrived from England, took command on Lake Ontario, and conveyed Sir Gordon Drummond with troops to Oswego, which they took. In July the American General Brown captured Fort Erie, and advanced to Chippewa, where he was met by General Riall, with about two thousand regulars, militia, and Indians. A severe battle was fought, in which the British lost in killed, wounded and missing five hundred and fifteen, and the Americans three hundred and twelve. General Riall was obliged to fall back to Twenty-one Mile Creek, and the Americans proceeded to invest Fort George. Finding it stronger than he expected, and being disappointed of assistance from Sackett's Harbour, after destroying the village of St David's and plundering the inhabitants of the frontier, Brown retired towards Chippewa. The British General, having received some reinforcements, advanced, and the two armies met again near the Falls of Niagara. Here in a place called Lundy's Lane, after valiantly fighting till midnight with various fortune, the Americans were obliged to retire towards Fort Erie, losing eight hundred and fifty-four men, while the loss of the British was eight hundred and seventy-eight.

17. Having determined on attacking Fort Erie, General Drummond followed them, arrived before the Fort on the 3rd of August, and invested it. On the 11th the

American armed schooners Ohio and Somers, aiding in the defence of the place, were taken possession of by seventy-five British seamen under Captain Dodds in boats, some of which had been carried on men's shoulders from below the Falls. On the night of the 15th the army assaulted the Fort and were repulsed, losing nine hundred and five men and several gallant officers.

18. After the capture of Paris and the abdication of Napoleon, Britain was enabled to turn her forces against the United States, and doubtless anticipated a full triumph. A strong detachment arrived late in the season, and part of them were ordered to march round Lake Ontario to the Niagara Frontier. The principal part, however, were assembled on the Richelieu, where they were brigaded with the forces of General de Rottenburg. Great exertions were made on both sides to ensure a superiority on Lake Champlain ; and in September a force of ten thousand men under Sir George Prevost passed the frontier and attacked Plattsburg. The British flotilla from Isle-aux-Noix came up and attacked the American naval force, the land batteries opened at the same time, and the troops moved on to the assault. Here again, however, victory declared itself for the Americans, the naval force was defeated, and the whole army retreated (very unnecessarily, as it was thought at the time) and re-entered Lower Canada with the loss of two hundred and thirty-five men, exclusive of deserters.

19. On the Niagara Frontier in the same month the American forces made a sortie from Fort Erie, which was

repulsed, but with great loss. On the 21st the British broke up and retired upon Chippewa, Fort George and Burlington Heights. In October Sir James Yeo brought reinforcements and supplies to General Drummond. On the 5th of November the Americans evacuated Fort Erie, the only military fort they had in the Canadas. A predatory party, which had landed from Detroit, and penetrated more than a hundred miles into Upper Canada, retired upon the approach of the British force from Burlington Heights, thus entirely abandoning Canada. The command of the Lakes was at the same time secured, and several American Forts were captured.

20. In the meantime the British obtained possession of Washington, where they destroyed the public offices and property. They were, however, very unsuccessful in their attacks upon Baltimore and New Orleans. Happily a treaty of peace between the United States and Great Britain was signed at Ghent, December 24th, 1814, and on the 9th of March, 1815, was made known at Quebec by Sir George Prevost, which terminated this unfortunate and disastrous war.

21. Neither the treaty of peace nor the war, however, brought glory to Britain. The country was saved chiefly by the gallantry and loyalty of its own inhabitants, whose conduct is beyond all praise. Many were the instances, however, of distinguished military skill and of gallant endurance of fatigue and hardship displayed by the army sent to defend Canada; but some unhappy influences seem to have pervaded the national councils. When a power-

ful army might have acted effectually, only a few thousands were sent; and men who had beaten the most celebrated troops in the World were defeated and destroyed in an attack on mud breast-works at New Orleans. An open and populous country, where a European army might have carried all before it, was left with only a few regiments, whilst the naval force on the Lakes was so deficient that defeat was unavoidable.

II. General History from the Conclusion of Peace, 1815, to the Riots, 1832.—1. Sir Gordon Drummond succeeded Sir George Prevost in the administration of the government in April, 1815; and Joseph Wilson, Esquire, held the office of Administrator under him till the arrival of Sir John Coape Sherbrooke, who was appointed Governor General in 1816. This vigorous and judicious administration gave general satisfaction. He was instructed to accept the offer, formerly made, to pay the whole civil list out of the funds of the Province. He applied, therefore, not for a permanent settlement but merely for the sum necessary to meet the current expenses. This was readily granted, the Assembly reserving to themselves the appropriation of it.

2. Sir John, being obliged by severe illness to return to England, was succeeded in 1818 by the Duke of Richmond. In September, 1819, the Duke's life and government were suddenly terminated by an attack of hydrophobia. This was occasioned by the bite of a tame fox, not suspected to be in a rabid state, with which the Duke was amusing himself. From the time of his death

the government was administered by the Honourable James Monk as President, and afterwards by Sir Peregrine Maitland, until the arrival of the Earl of Dalhousie as Governor General in 1820.

3. The financial affairs continued to go on well until the death of George III. A new Provincial Parliament was then assembled, which the government expected would pass a bill providing for the civil list. Instead of this the Assembly resolved to appropriate all the revenue of the Province, amounting to about £140,000, including £34,000 of anuual permanent revenue, which, together with a small hereditary revenue of £3,800 had been secured to the Crown by the Quebec Act. The Crown claimed the exclusive right of distributing these lesser sums. Neither party would yield, and Lord Dalhousie went to England to arrange, if possible, this difficult affair.

4. This amiable nobleman had been very popular in Nova Scotia, but he was not so successful in his present station. Having estimated the amount necessary for the public service at £22,000 in addition to the revenues vested in the Crown, he solicited this sum as a permanent grant. The Assembly, however, positively refused to grant any more than an annual supply bill. It was at last settled that two estimates should be presented—the first embracing the government expenses, to be paid by funds of which the Crown claimed the entire disposal—the second to be employed for general objects, of which the members had the entire control. The measure gave general satisfaction, the sum was voted, and the session terminated amicably.

5. In the year 1823 the popular cause was strengthened by the insolvency of the Receiver-General Sir John Caldwell. An inquiry into his accounts had been repeatedly and vainly demanded by the Assembly ; and he proved, when investigated, to be indebted to the public nearly £100,000.

6. When Lord Dalhousie returned in 1825, he dissolved the House of Assembly. A new house assembled, when he refused to approve of Mr. Papineau, whom they had chosen as the Speaker ; and they refused to elect another. The consequence was that all operations with regard to the revenues of the Province were at an end, and no session of either house was held in the winter of 1827—1828.

7. The inhabitants of the Lower Province to the number of eighty-seven thousand petitioned the King, charging the Governor-general with many arbitrary acts, of applying public money improperly, of violent prorogation and dissolution of the House of Assembly, of continuing in office the Receiver- General after he was known to be insolvent, of dismissing militia officers for voting against his policy, and of new-modeling the commission of the peace to serve political purposes.

8. His Majesty's ministers submitted the whole to a Committee of the House of Commons. After giving their most serious attention to the subject, they made several enactments to secure to the French Canadians the peaceful enjoyment of their religion, laws and privileges. The Committee expressed their sorrow that the abuses complained of should have been so long allowed to exist in a British

colony. They retained, however, the power of the Crown over the revenues of the Province.

9. Sir James Kempt succeeded Lord Dalhousie. On calling a meeting of the Legislature, he formally accepted the election of Mr. Papineau as Speaker, and made a speech which was conciliatory, mild and wise. He assented to a Supply Bill to carry on the public service, and he may indeed be said to have effected a satisfactory understanding between the Legislature and the Executive Government. An Act of the Provincial Parliament was passed, which received His Majesty's sanction, to increase the representation of Lower Canada from fifty to eighty-four members. A general election took place agreeably to this act, and soon after Sir James Kempt returned to England, universally honoured and respected for his conciliatory and constitutional conduct.

10. He was succeeded by Lord Aylmer. During his administration the Asiatic cholera appeared in Canada. So great was the mortality that it was calculated that a greater number of persons had been carried off by it in three months in Lower Canada, where the population was only half a million, than in six months in Great Britain, where there was a population of above sixteen millions. A malignant influence, however, more permanent in its effects than the visitation of pestilence, began to manifest itself in the Province, menacing the peace, prosperity and institutions of the land, the confidence of social life, and the stability of British connection—we allude to the Insurrection.

III. From the First Riot at Montreal, 1832, to the End of the Insurrection of 1838.—1. The first serious tumult occurred on 21st of May, 1832, in consequence of political excitement during an election at Montreal. The civil power being unable to restrain the populace from acts of violence, it was found necessary to call in the military, when three persons were killed and several wounded. The awful visitations of the pestilence in 1832 and 1834 seem to have calmed down for a time this tumultuary spirit, which, however, soon returned.

2. The discontent and opposition of the leaders of Lower Canada to the British Government grew more intense. Soon after the arrival of Lord Gosford in 1835 the House of Assembly announced that they should consider certain fundamental alterations in the constitution as the condition of any vote of supply. This was the first instance of a direct refusal to grant the expenses of government. Affairs were thus brought to a crisis; and many of the *habitans* of Canada, a virtuous and well disposed people, were too easily led on step by step until, after the lapse of two years, acts of open insurrection were committed by them.

3. As a preparative for this conflict with the constituted authorities, and to rouse the passions of the *habitans* against them, public meetings were held in almost every parish, at which resolutions of the most inflammatory nature were passed. The tri-coloured flag, the emblem of revolution, was displayed at some of the villages on the Richelieu, and at a grand meeting at St. Charles the cap of liberty

was raised, and a solemn oath taken under it to be faithful to the revolutionary principles of which it was emblematical. All allegiance was at once discarded, and a determination evinced to take the management of affairs into their own hands.

4. No time was lost in carrying out these resolutions. Bands of armed men marched forth, spreading fear and consternation among the peaceable inhabitants of the country, and threatening them with loss of life and property if they did not join them.

5. The alarm of the loyal inhabitants of Lower Canada was now great. They met for the preservation of order and the continuance of the British connection. Troops were sent for to Nova Scotia and Upper Canada.

6. On the 6th of November, 1837, a riot occurred at Montreal, but no lives were lost. On the 10th Sir John Colborne, the Commander of the Forces, removed his head quarters from Sorel to Montreal. On the same day a detachment proceeded to St. John's under the command of Captain Glasgow. He found a large body of people posted on the opposite bank of the Richelieu, and the cavalry proceeded to take possession of the bridge, in order to prevent them from crossing.

7. On the 16th warrants were issued for the apprehension of twenty-six of the chief leaders. As a party of volunteer cavalry, newly organized, who had charge of two prisoners, were returning to Montreal, a large body of the peasantry fired upon them from behind the fences near Longueuil, and compelled them to abandon their pris-

oners. Colonel Wetherall, with a considerable force, proceeded immediately from Chambly in the direction of St. Charles, for the purpose of dispersing a large body of people who had assembled there and fortified their position. At some places the insurgents fled on the approach of the army, but at St. Charles the defenders were so obstinate that the Colonel was obliged to storm and carry the works, burning every house but one. The slaughter was great on the side of the unfortunate and misguided people, but slight on that of the troops. Another party of troops, who were marching from Sorel up the course of the Richelieu in order to effect a junction with Colonel Wetherall, were not so successful. At St. Denis they met with such a strong opposition that they were compelled to abandon their intention and march back to Sorel. This success on the part of the insurgents was only of short duration, for, on the winter roads being formed, the same party marched through the country without opposition.

8. Having captured St. Charles, and dispersed a considerable body collected for the purpose of cutting off his return, Colonel Wetherall came back to Montreal, bringing with him the pole and cap of liberty which had been reared at St. Charles, and twenty-five prisoners. Four or five battalions of troops were raised at Montreal, and upwards of fifty corps of various kinds in other parts of the country.

9. One of the most tragical events which took place at this time was the murder of Lieutenant Weir. This young officer had been sent overland to Sorel with a

despatch directing the officer in command to prepare a force to accompany Colonel Gore, who was to leave Montreal in the afternoon in the steamboat. The roads were so bad that traveling was almost impossible, and he could not reach Sorel by land until half an hour after Colonel Gore and his division had crossed the St. Lawrence and marched on their route to St. Denis. Taking a fresh calêche, he hastened to join his troops; but, mistaking the road, he passed them and arrived at St. Denis before them. Here he was made a prisoner, closely pinioned, sent forward to St. Charles, and on the road was barbarously murdered by his brutal guardians. The fact, and the circumstances attending it, were only ascertained on the second expedition to St. Denis. The body was found in the Richelieu, and was brought to Montreal for interment. The funeral took place with military honours, and so solemn and imposing a sight was never before witnessed in the city.

10. Martial law was proclaimed in the District of Montreal on the 5th of December, and Sir John Colborne invested with authority to administer it. Immediately after this the attention of government was called to the preparations making at the Lake of the Two Mountains, at St. Eustache, St. Benoit and St. Scholastique, where the most active and able leaders of the revolt had fortified themselves in a formidable manner.

11. On the morning of the 13th of December Sir John Colborne, with about thirteen hundred men, advanced towards this District from Montreal along the left

bank of the Ottawa. On the 14th the army crossed the river and invested the village of St. Eustache. The attack was completely successful, though attended with much destruction of life and property. The handsome church was set on fire as well as the *presbytère* and about sixty of the principal houses. One of the leaders was killed near the church, and a large number burnt or suffocated from the flames; of the troops only one or two were killed, and a few wounded.

12. The next day, as the troops marched forward to St. Benoit, his Excellency was met by delegates bearing a flag of truce, and stating that the insurgents were prepared to lay down their arms unconditionally. Almost every house exhibited something white; and, on arriving at St. Benoit, two hundred and fifty of these misguided men were found drawn up in a line, and suing for pardon, stating that their leaders had deserted them. They were immediately dismissed to their homes and occupations. With the return of the troops from the county of the Two Mountains the military operations, connected with the first insurrection in Lower Canada, may be said to have terminated.

Questions on Part III.—Chapter 2.

What are the divisions of this Chapter?
Of what period does this division treat?

I.—1. What is said of the Americans? Was this the case? How did the Canadians act? Give an account of the preparations made to meet them. What was done by Sir George Prevost? Why was paper currency substituted for money? How was Quebec guarded?

2. What is said of Upper Canada? What is said of the population? To whom was the government confided?
3. Who invaded Canada? What is said of the British force? What force did he muster? What is said of Hull's force, and whither did he retreat? How did Brock proceed? What took place? How was this conduct regarded by the American people?
4. Where did the Americans next appear? Where did they cross? Give an account of General Brock's conduct. Give an account of his death? What is said of the Americans, and who dislodged them?
5. What ensued? By whom was it interrupted? Where was another absurd attempt made? What did the severity of the season cause? Who made an attack on Ogdensburg? What advantage did the British gain?
6. What is said of the American fleet? For what express purpose was this campaign? How did they succeed at Toronto?
7. What was their next conquest? Of what did they obtain possession? To what place did General Vincent retire? What plan was executed? What was the consequence?
8. What vessels were captured, and what barracks were destroyed? What happened at Sackett's Harbour? What happened at Lake Erie?
9. Where did the British next sustain a defeat? Describe the Kentucky riflemen. In what manner did they fight? Whom did the Indians lose? What had been the main object of his life? To whom had he attached himself? What is said of General Proctor's retreat?
10. Where did the Americans next assemble, and for what purpose? Who entered Canada? From whom did he meet with a repulse? What is said of its composition and numbers?
11. What is said of Colonel de Salaberry? What is said of his character? Of what did he take advantage? What is said of the loss on both sides? To what place did General Hampton retreat?
12. Give an account of the proceedings of General Wilkinson. When might he have reached Montreal? Why did he delay? What did this give Sir George time to do? What is said of the detachments?
13. From whom did Wilkinson receive despatches? What did he find? What did he resolve? Who marched against General Morrison? What fears were entertained? State the result. To what place did they finally retire?
14. What town was burnt by the Americans? Who took Fort

Niagara ? In what manner did the British act ? What is said of the border warfare ?

15. When were operations again commenced ? What new attack was made on Lower Canada ? What is said of Lacolle Mill ? Did they succeed ?

16. Who took Oswego ? Who captured Fort Erie ? By whom was he met at Chippewa ? What was the result ? How far did the Americans proceed ? Give an account of their conduct. Where did the armies again meet ? What was the loss on each side ?

17. Give an account of the attack on Fort Erie. What captives did the British make ? What was the issue of the attack on the fort ?

18. When was Britain enabled to turn her attention to Canada ? Whither did a part of the detachment march ? Where were the principal part assembled ? What exertions were made on both sides, and who attacked Plattsburg ? Describe the attack. What was the issue ?

19. What sortie was made ? What is said of the British ? What is said of Sir James Yeo ? What is said of Fort Erie ? What party retired from Canada ? What was secured ? What captured ?

20. Of what place did the British gain possession ? What is said of Baltimore and New Orleans ? What was now signed ? When was it made known in Quebec ?

21. What is said of these events ? By whom was Canada saved ? What is said of the army ? What is said of the national councils ? Give some examples. Give some examples at New Orleans. Give some examples in Canada generally. Give some examples on the Lakes.

II.—1. Who succeeded Sir George Prevost ? Who was administrator ? Who was Governor General ? What is said of his administration ? What was he instructed to accept ? For what sum did he apply ? Was it granted ?

2. By whom was Sir John succeeded ? When and how did he die ? By what was this occasioned ? By whom was the government administered ?

3. What happened on the death of George III. ? What did the Assembly resolve to appropriate ? What was claimed by the Crown ? How did Lord Dalhousie act ?

4. What is said of Lord Dalhousie ? What did he solicit ? Was it granted ? How was it at last settled ? The first ? The second ? What is said of this measure ?

5. How was the popular cause strengthened this year ? To what amount was he indebted to the public ?

6. What was his first act ? Whom did he refuse to sanction ? What was the consequence ?
7. What is said of the petition to the king ? Mention the first of them. The second. The third. The fourth. The fifth.
8. To what body was this petition submitted ? What was done by them ? What regret did they express ? What did they retain ?
9. Who succeeded Lord Dalhousie ? Whom did he recognise as Speaker ? To what did he assent ? What did he effect ? What act was passed ? What took place ? What is said of Sir James Kempt ?
10. By whom was he succeeded ? Give an accouut of the ravages of the cholera. What other influence began to manifest itself in the Province ?

III.—1. What portion of history does this division embrace ? Where was the first riot ? What were its results ? What is said of the cholera ?
2. What is said of the leaders of Lower Canada ? What did they announce ? Of what was this the first instance ? What is said of the *habitans* ?
3. What is said of the meetings ? What is said of the flag ? What of the cap of liberty ? What did they discard ?
4. How were these resolutions carried out ?
5. For what purpose did the inhabitants meet ?
6. When was there a riot at Montreal ? To what place did Sir John Colborne remove his head-quarters ? Where were the *habitans* ranged ? What was done by the cavalry ?
7. What were issued ? Relate a circumstance which occurred near Longueuil. In what direction did Colonel Wetherall proceed ? What was he obliged to do at St. Charles ? What is said of the loss of life ? Who marched from Sorel up the Richelieu ? With what did they meet at St. Denis ? Were the insurgents successful ?
8. Mention the further proceedings of Colonel Wetherall. Where and in what numbers were troops raised ?
9. What is said of the murder of Lieutenant Weir ? To what place had he been sent ? How was he detained ? What mistake did he unfortunnately make ? Where was he murdered ? When was this found out ? Where was the body found ? What is said of his funeral ?
10. What is said of martial law ? At what place were preparations making ? And by whom ?
11. When did Sir John Colborne advance to the District of the Lake of the Two Mountains ? What place did they attack ? Give account of this sad affair.

12. By whom was Sir John Colborne met? What happened at St. Benoit? How were the insurgents treated? What ended with the return of the troops?

CHAPTER III.

DIVISIONS.

I. Insurrection in Upper Canada, 1837.—*II. Mission of Lord Durham*, 1838.—*III. From the Departure of Lord Durham*, 1838, *to the Union of the Provinces*, 1840.

I. Insurrection in Upper Canada.—1. The news of the rising in Lower Canada was the signal for action on the part of the mal-contents in the Upper Province. A meeting of the "Provincial Convention" was immediately called at Toronto.

2. This convention soon after sent forth a manifesto, the purport of which was to call upon the people to rise against their ruler, and to "put down those who oppress and enslave the country." It then proceeded to announce the intention of "the friends of liberty" to grant several hundred acres of government land to every volunteer, to secure free deeds to all settlers, and to root out the Canada Company. The country was to be governed so economically that, instead of costing the people £100,000 per annum, it should be managed at the reasonable rate of

£25,000, the rest to go for the purpose of "making crooked paths straight and rough places plain;" an undertaking which any one, acquainted with the country parts of Canada, will own was more desirable than attainable.

3. On the earliest rumour of insurrection Sir Francis Bond Head, the Governer of Upper Canada, had sent every soldier to the Lower Province; and nothing could exceed his anxiety lest Sir John Colborne should send back some of them. He had formed a plan of showing the American people that, if they thought proper to come over and revolutionize Canada, this was the time to do it successfully; or of proving that the Canadians did not wish to desert the standard of their fathers.

4. Notwithstanding the many rumours of insurrection the first outbreak took place most unexpectedly. The misguided men had been induced by their leaders to travel from their homes through the cross roads, and to meet early in the morning of the 4th of December, about four miles north of the city of Toronto, at a place called "Montgomery's Tavern." As soon as they had gained this position, they began to arrest every person on the road, in order to prevent information of their proceedings from reaching the town.

5. The first victim was Colonel Moodie, a distinguished officer, who resided near, and who had received some hints of what was going forward, and was hastening to the city. He was fired at, wounded, and died in three hours. It is said that Mr. Mackenzie, the leader, now observed to his followers that, "as blood had been shed, they were in for

it, and had nothing left but to march into the city ;" and this they prepared to do with all speed.

6. Providentially their advance guard was met by Alderman Powell and some other gentlemen who were riding out of town to ascertain the truth of the rumours which were afloat. They were immediately arrested by some of the leaders. The Alderman, however, contrived to escape, and, after rousing the Governor, who was in bed and asleep, he ran to the town-bell and rang such a peal as effectually roused most of the citizens from their slumbers, and greatly alarmed the insurgents, coming on the ear in the stillness of the night like a voice warning them to desist.

7. The insurgents, kept by the good hand of God from seizing the moment when they might easily have taken the city, did little during the night. An advanced picquet of the Loyalists, under the command of Mr. Sheriff Jarvis, met a party of them within the precincts of the city, and drove them back, one of the insurgents being killed and another wounded.

8. The inhabitants of Toronto were greatly surprised to find their city thus suddenly invested by a large body of armed men, commanded by Mackenzie, Van Egmont, and several other leaders. In this trying moment there was nothing to look to but the determined loyalty of the Canadians themselves. The inhabitants were immediately called out by the Governor, who proceeded to the town-hall, where he found the Chief Justice, with a musket over his shoulders, surrounded by a band of brave men who had

hastily assembled. The arms, which had been deposited in the town-hall on the departure of the soldiers for the Lower Province, were then unpacked and placed in the hands of those who rallied round the place of rendezvous. Before morning a large body of loyalists had assembled, which was increased in the course of the day by the arval of the Speaker of the House of Assembly, Sir Allan M'Nab, with the men of the Gore District, while others from different quarters came in hourly.

9. By the next morning the loyalists were sufficiently strong to have attacked the insurgents. Feeling, however, great reluctance to commence a civil war, Sir Francis sent two gentlemen to call upon the leaders to avoid the effusion of human blood, and return to their allegiance. To this Mackenzie had the hardihood to reply, "that he would only consent on condition that his demands should be settled by a *national convention*." He insolently added, "that he would wait till two o'clock for an answer." The answer was immediately returned to him in the significant word "*never*."

10. On the 7th the loyal band, composed of all orders and classes, well armed and taking with them a field-piece, marched out to attack the insurgents and completely routed them; when Mackenzie effected his escape from the Province. The insurgents were pursued four miles, two of the chiefs were taken, and a great number of prisoners; the tavern was burnt to the ground, and the whole affair so completely quashed that Sir Francis dismissed the greater part of the prisoners on the spot. The loss of life was

very small on the part of the mal-contents, and not one man fell on the side of the loyalists.

11. In the meantime men flowed in from all quarters, —from the lakes and rivers, from the vallies and forests, —in such numbers that Sir Francis had to give public notice that there existed no further occasion for their resort to Toronto. The next day he issued a general order authorizing the whole of the militia of the Bathurst, Ottawa and Eastern Districts, to go and lend their assistance to Lower Canada. A number of prisoners, who had been taken in different parts of the country, were released and sent to their homes; and in about a week comparative tranquillity was restored.

12. After his flight from the field of battle Mr. Mackenzie went to Buffalo. Here he succeeded in rousing in a certain party of Americans that strong desire they have always shown to become the possessors of Canada. These lawless men plundered the State arsenals of cannon, arms and ammunition, and took possession of Navy Island, a little above the Falls of Niagara, on the 13th of December. Numbers enlisted, who were no doubt tempted by the "Proclamation of the Patriot Provincial Government." This promised to every volunteer three hundred acres of valuable land in Canada and one hundred dollars in silver on condition of their joining the Patriot forces in Navy Island. Why they took the name of Patriots is unknown, as a Patriot is a lover of his country; and these men, both Canadians and Americans, were the very worst enemies their country had ever possessed, and might have caused a

war between the British and Americans, in which thousands of valuable lives might have been sacrificed.

13. The commander in chief of this enterprise was a certain Van Rausselaer. Hundreds flocked to his standard, while provisions and supplies of every kind were furnished in profusion from Buffalo and the surrounding country. It was useless for the American authorities to interfere; the people chose to patronise the Patriots, and Navy Island soon became a very busy place. The artillery of the State of New York which had been purloined was mounted, and soon opened its fire on the Canadian shore, which in that part is thickly peopled. Five hundred pounds were offered by the Patriots for the apprehension of the English Governor. This of course was to be paid out of the wealth and resources of Canada, which they certainly imagined would speedily be at their disposal.

14. A body of militia under Colonel M'Nab was posted on the Canadian shore to defend the inhabitants, and prevent the Patriots from landing. Strict orders were, however, given to avoid any violation of the American territory, and these would probably have been carefully attended to, had not a strong temptation offered. The small steamer Caroline, which was employed in carrying the munitions of war to Navy Island, was lying on the American side of the river. Colonel M'Nab dispatched a party under the command of Captain Drew, of the Royal Navy, to take or sink her. This they did in a gallant manner, and, having set fire to her, suffered her to drift down the Falls of Niagara. Great excitement

was caused in the United States by this attack; but the piratical occupation of the vessel was well known, and convinced all well-thinking people of its necessity.

15. Soon afterwards a sufficient force was collected to dislodge the Navy Island warriors. A short cannonade from the Canadian shore caused them to evacuate their position in the night of the 14th of January, 1838.

16. A party of the Patriots next thought fit to attack the Western District, whilst another party made a demonstration against Kingston. The latter took possession of a little island about six miles from Kingston, but, terrified by the approach of a party of militia, they fled without any appearance of resistance. At Detroit another party seized a narrow strip of land called Fighting Island, and made ostentatious preparations for remaining there. No sooner, however, did the troops approach them than they hurried away, leaving behind them some arms and a quantity of stores.

17. Sometime afterwards another party threw themselves into Point Pelé Island in Lake Erie. Here Colonel Maitland took such a position as obliged them either to fight or surrender. There was a sharp resistance, and many of the soldiers were shot down from behind the wooded coverts. They then extended their ranks in order to avoid the concentrated fire, and charged with the bayonets. The island was then carried, and the most of the defenders either slain or taken prisoners. In all these forays, with the exception of that at Toronto, by far the greater number of the marauders were citizens of the United States.

18. On the 15th of January Sir Francis Head announced to the local Parliament that, having had the misfortune to differ from Her Majesty's Government in one or two points of Colonial policy, he had felt it his duty to tender his resignation, which had been accepted, and that he was to be succeeded by Sir George Arthur. His farewell speech abounded with well merited eulogy of the brave Canadians, and of the institutions they had so gallantly defended. In spite of peculiarities we must admire the frankness and boldness with which Sir Francis acted in the moment of trial. His friends considered that his determined conduct saved the country; while his enemies say that in depriving the country of its usual defenders, he induced the disaffected to rise in arms, but whoever calmly reviews the whole of the circumstances must own that the country was preserved by the special interposition of Divine Providence. Sir George Arthur arrived at Toronto on the 23rd of March, and assumed the government.

II. Mission of Lord Durham.—1. The British Government, having prevailed upon the Earl of Durham to take the office of Governor General, he arrived in Canada on the 29th of May, and was received in the most cordial manner by all parties. One of his first acts was a general jail delivery with some very few exceptions. A Proclamation was also issued, allowing those, who had fled out of the country, to return to their homes. His Lordship was empowered to form a Council, composed of thirteen members from each Province. These he was to use as advisers and dismiss at pleasure.

2. In the meantime the Patriots on the American frontier were making active preparations for a renewal of hostilities. On the 30th of May a band of men, headed by one Johnson, boarded a British steamer, the Sir Robert Peel, which was lying at Wells' Island, and, after robbing the passengers of their money and valuable effects, forced them to shore, and set fire to the vessel. Lord Durham, who had only just arrived, was so incensed at this outrage that he offered a reward of one thusand dollars for the discovery and conviction of the offenders. Johnson, however, set all the authorities, British and American, at defiance. Taking refuge amongst " the Thousund Isles," he and his band used to keep themselves out of the reach of all law, civil or military. Provided with boats of surprising lightness, they moved up and down the river with equal speed and facility, making their appearance when least expected, and baffling all pursuit.

3. Soon after his arrival Lord Durham found it necessary to dispose of some individuals of distinction, who had been engaged in the Insurrection. He banished them to Bermuda, there to be kept in strict surveillance, and to suffer the penalty of death if they returned to Canada without the permission of the Governor. This was an unlawful measure, and was greatly disapproved of by the Government in England.

4. Lord Durham made an extensive tour throughout the Province, and was everywhere received with respect. His Lordship and the civil officers attached to his Government collected a great mass of information relative to

Canada, which was afterwards thrown into the shape of a Report to the Queen, and by Her Majesty's direction printed and submitted to Parliament.

5. His Lordship, however, did not long remain in charge of the Government. Finding that his conduct with regard to the prisoners sent to Bermuda was condemned in England, he resigned his office and left Quebec on the 1st and arrived at Plymouth in England on the 26th of November, 1838.

6. The very night of Lord Durham's departure numerous arrests took place at Montreal on account of certain of the Lower Canadians having organized another revolt.

III. FROM THE BREAKING OUT OF THE SECOND INSURRECTION IN 1838 TO THE UNION OF THE PROVINCES OF UPPER AND LOWER CANADA IN 1841.—1. The projected rising was originally intended to take place at Montreal at an hour when the troops were at church and unarmed. The wise precautions taken by the Commander of the Forces, Sir John Colborne, however, baffled this scheme. Beauharnois was then selected as the scene of action, and on the 3rd of November a large party succeeded in surprising the Loyalists of the village and making them prisoners. Amongst these were Mr. Ellice, the son of the Seigneur, who had acted as Private Secretary to Lord Durham, and several other gentlemen. Mrs. Ellice was also taken prisoner, but was treated with kindness and courtesy, and was deposited by the insurgents in the care of the Curé of Beauharnois.

2. A singular event took place the next morning in the

Indian village of Caughnawaga, or "the Village of the Rapid," near Montreal. As the inhabitants were at worship, a party of insurgents surrounded the church. The Indians immediately turned out, and the Chief, setting an example which was promptly followed by all, raised the war-whoop, seized the person next him, and wrested his musket out of his hands. The others, being panic-struck probably by this strange noise, surrendered themselves prisoners to the number of sixty-four, and, tied with their own sashes and garters, were taken into Montreal. These Indians are a remnant of the once powerful and ferocious tribe of the Six Nations; they are now domesticated, and cultivate the land. Their Chiefs are humane men, and enforce the strictest order, and the observance of the rules of civilized warfare.

3. Between the 3rd and 6th about four thousand insurgents were concentrated at Napierville in the county of Laprairie, to which place Sir John Colborne moved with a considerable body of troops. From the badness of the roads, however, they did not arrive until the 10th, when they found that the insurgent force had dispersed during the night, and were beyond pursuit. The same day a small party of the 71st Regiment, with upwards of a thousand Glengary men, whose settlement is on the opposite side of the River, took Beauharnois, and rescued all the prisoners found there.

4. A body of the insurgents to the number of four hundred had been detached from Napierville to open a communication with the United States. They were met by a

party of loyal volunteers, who defeated them, drove them across the frontier, and took several prisoners, a field-piece, and three hundred stand of arms. The victors then threw themselves into the Church at Odelltown, awaited the approach of Dr. Nelson, the leader in the revolt, and of those who had fled from Napierville, and repulsed them with the loss of one hundred men.

5. Mr. Ellice and the other gentlemen, who had been seized by the insurgents, were released, and the road pointed out to them by which to reach Laprairie. They had been well and kindly treated by the Curé and Nuns at Chateauguay. Indeed in this rising there was but little violence in the conduct of the Canadians, and that little must have been caused by peculiar circumstances, as they are a most peaceful and kind-hearted race. In little more than a week after the first movement Sir John Colborne had the satisfaction to announce that the insurrection in Lower Canada was at an end.

6. It is not a little surprising that this should have been the case, when we consider that they were supported by a numerous body in the United States, who, under the title of "Sympathizers," espoused their cause, and supplied them with arms and ammunition. Indeed there is no doubt but that a species of association, in which the members were bound to secret oath and signs, existed along the whole frontier.

7. At the time of the rising in the Montreal District a body of Americans, amounting to about four hundred, a iled from the vicinity of Sackett's Harbour, and landed

at Prescott. Colonel Young, with all the force that he could collect, and Captain Fowell, with an armed steamer, compelled many of them to disperse. A considerable number of them, however, took refuge in a windmill and an adjoining house built of stone, where they defended themselves and killed eighteen of the British. The walls were too strong to be reduced without cannon, and some guns and additional troops were brought up. An attack was then made, when the party in the mill attempted to escape, but were all captured. One hundred and fifty-six prisoners were taken to Kingston, to be tried by Court Martial.

8. Another invasion from Detroit was made at Sandwich, when they set fire to a steamer and to the barracks, and killed several individuals in cold blood. Amongst them was Dr. Hume, a military surgeon, who had mistaken them for some of the provincial militia, and fallen into their hands unarmed. His body was thrown aside, hacked and mangled by axes and knives.

9. Colonel Prince, on hearing of these atrocities, attacked them, when they fled, leaving twenty-six prisoners. The inhabitants were so much provoked by these repeated invasions of their homes that it was judged necessary no longer to forgive, and several of the ringleaders were put to death, and the rest condemned to severe punishments, indeed the whole frontier was assailed with continual invasions. A party of one thousand or twelve hundred had, early in June, crossed the Niagara river and endeavoured to excite the people to insurrection. After setting fire

to an inn and taking fourteen of the Provincial Lancers prisoners, on hearing of the approach of the troops, they hastily re-crossed the country, leaving forty prisoners, among whom were the first and second in command.

10. Six of the Prescott invaders and three of Dr. Hume's murderers were executed. The leader of the former was a Pole by birth ; his name was Von Schoultz, and he was merely a military adventurer. He had fought with skill and courage, and died bravely and without complaint except of the false representations which had caused him to join this worthless cause. Nearly all the political offenders have since been pardoned, and very great leniency was shown generally by the English Government to the insurgents. Occasionally there may have been instances of apparent harshness, and perhaps such cases could not have been avoided.

11. It cannot be denied that there were many grievances that ought to have been redresssd in both sections of Canada ; but there were constitutional means for effecting these without having recourse to the dreadful alternative of arms. Several years elapsed before the bitter feeling, which civil war produces between those who stood in hostile array against each, died away. Happy for the people of all origins that it has died away, never, we hope, again to be revived. Let their future rivalry be, which shall most improve and advance the interests of the noble country in which a gracious God has cast their lot.

12. A period of tranquillity now ensued, during which great interest was excited by the proposal of a Union be-

tween the two Provinces. It was strongly recommended by Lord Durham, and in Upper Canada the House of Assembly declared themselves in favour of it on certain conditions, but objections were raised by the Legislative Council which induced the government to postpone the measure.

13. A Bill was passed to continue the extraordinary powers which had been granted to Sir John Colborne during the Insurrection in Lower Canada, it being thought desirable rather to prevent than to quell these insurrectionary movements. In the autumn of this year the Right Hon. ourable Mr. Charles Poulett Thompson, formerly President of the Board of Trade, was nominated to the important office of Governor-General. He soon after communicated a proposition from the English Government to unite the Provinces, both to be represented equally in the New Legislature, that they were to agree to a sufficient Civil List, and that the charge of the principal part of the debt of Upper Canada was to fall on the United Province. This was agreed to in both the Legislative Council and the House of Assembly of that Province, and in the Special Council of Lower Canada, and the Union came into operation in 1840.

14. The Legislature now consists of the Governor General and two Houses, the Legislative Council and the Legislative Assembly. The members of the Legislative Council at present consist of forty-five, who are appointed for life by the Crown, and are chosen from among the inhabitants who are the most conspicuous for

character, intelligence and wealth. The Legislative Assembly consists of one hundred and thirty members, half from each Province: they are elected by the people. The qualification for voters, in point of fact, almost amounts to universal suffrage, as one out of six in the Province has the power to vote from paying ten pounds of annual rent, or by owning a freehold of forty shillings' yearly value. The Executive Council, or Ministry, consists of a few officials who perform all the duties of administration under the Governor.

15. It is not intended to bring down this history later than the Union of the Provinces. We add only a few notices of events which have occurred since that period.

16. A few months after the Union a general election took place, which was favourable to the Government in its results. Lord Sydenham (formerly Mr. P. Thompson) addressed the House in a sound and conciliatory speech which was well received. He did not live, however, to see his measures carried into execution. He fell from his horse, and died in great torture. He was buried at Kingston by his own desire. Lord Sydenham was succeeded by Sir Charles Bagot, who was soon after a sufferer from ill health, and died at Kingston in May, 1843.

17. In 1843 Sir Charles Metcalfe, afterwards Lord Metcalfe, succeeded to the administration. He had been formerly Governor of Jamaica, where he had very great difficulties to contend with, but overcame them all, gaining the admiration, love and respect of the inhabitants, and the fullest approbation of the Government at Home. Un-

fortunately continued ill-health obliged him to return to England in 1845, and he was succeeded by the Earl Cathcart, the Commander of the Forces in British North America. The appointment of Earl Cathcart was not looked upon as any thing further than for temporary purposes, and he was accordingly in a short time succeeded by the Earl of Elgin.

18. His Government commenced under circumstances by no means auspicious. The other recent changes in the policy of the Imperial Government with regard to free-trade had the effect of throwing the mercantile affairs of the Province into the greatest confusion. A wide-spread bankruptcy brought distress and ruin to the houses of thousands, and, as a natural result, not only was all improvement put a stop to but many of our best citizens and labourers abandoned the country to seek employment in the United States.

19. During this state of depression and discontent the Ministry of the day introduced a Bill for paying the losses sustained during the outbreaks of 1837 and 1838. This measure was resisted by one party, both in and out of the House, with so much animosity that it led to the destruction of the St. Ann's Market, then used for the meeting of Parliament, and with it perished in the flames nearly all the public documents of the Province, besides the valuable libraries of the House of Assembly and Legislative Council, inflicting a loss not easily made up. The consequence of this unfortunate event threw Montreal into great confusion, which led to the House of Assembly voting an

address to the Governor recommending the removal of the Seat of Government from Montreal, to be fixed for four years at Toronto and four at Quebec alternately. This resolution was put into effect in the autumn of that year, since which time this system has been and now is in operation.

20. The disturbances which have just been mentioned were entirely quieted in the course of the summer, and various indications showed that a more prosperous state of affairs might be looked for, which subsequent events have realized. The most important of these events is the immense impulse that has been given to the Railway enterprise. In the course of the winter of 1852–53 contracts were entered into under the Provincial guarantee for constructing an immense line of Railroad from Quebec on the one hand and Portland on the other to Richmond, thence to Montreal and to Toronto, including in its course a bridge over the St. Lawrence at the City of Montreal—which works are now in progress—and, when completed, will be the greatest in the World, involving an outlay of nearly £3,000,000 of money. It would be too long a disquisition to enter into all the causes that have brought back prosperity to our country; suffice it to say that at no time in its history has Canada been in so flourishing a condition, or bid so fair for the future. Farmers, merchants and mechanics are all thriving, and the labourers obtaining very high rates of wages, so that, unless some unforeseen circumstances should occur to mar the present fine prospects, we shall have many reasons to be proud of our country.

21. The subject of education, by far the most important for our people, is daily attracting more attention, and much has been done to bring it to all. Upper Canada has greatly advanced, and, though various causes have tended to obstruct the dissemination of knowledge in the Lower Province, still we have every reason to hope that they will yield to the growing desire of the people to be put in this respect on an equality with the citizens of Upper Canada and the United States. And, whatever the ignorance of the past may have been, we yet hope soon to see the time when all shall have at all events the three great means of acquiring knowledge—reading, writing and arithmetic. And, when such shall be the case, we may no longer dread the re-occurrence of such events as during the course of this History we have had unfortunately to recount.

22. In proof of the great progress that has been made in the Province, we shall content ourselves with one or two extracts from the Census of the population taken in 1851. In 1841 the Population of Upper Canada was..... 465,375
while in 1851 it had reached..... 952,061,
thus in ten years nearly doubling the number of its inhabitants. In 1844 the Population of Lower Canada was..... 690,782.
In 1851 it had reached..... 890,261,
thus showing a population for the United Provinces of 1,842,265, which, as progress has gone on since 1851 at an equal and probably greater rate of increase, we may

safely now assume to be in round numbers two millions of inhabitants, to which it is highly gratifying to add that we have every right to say that this is a population of prospering and happy people.

23. It will be seen that the Upper Province is increasing in population in a much more rapid degree than the Lower. This is easily accounted for by its superior climate and the manner in which lands are held, free from all burdens payable to Seigniors as in the Lower Province. This last objection, however, will soon be removed by an equitable arrangement among the parties interested, and a wiser system introduced, which will, without doubt, give a new impulse to the settlement of the many thousands of acres of excellent land which are still in a state of nature in Lower Canada. An Act for effecting a settlement of the Seigniors' claims passed the Provincial Parliament in 1855.

24. We cannot better conclude this work than in the language of the author whom we have already quoted.

25. "The present is, beyond all doubt, the time of Canada's greatest prosperity; from the highest to the lowest—merchant, farmer, tradesman, labourer—their hands are full of business, their profits and wages are ample; there is scarcely a shadow for the discontented to lay hold of. The country has now only begun to arrive at that degree of maturity when trade takes its great start. We should recollect that English Canada is more than a century younger than the trading districts of the United States; it is unfair to compare their progress in

commerce hitherto, for, till very recently, the conditions of this country were such as to render the former merely anxious, and busied in the support of life, the primitive pursuits of husbandry being the only occupation of the people. As numbers increased and towns enlarged, wealth and intelligence were brought to bear, and the last five, ten, fifteen years show changes in these Provinces also incredible."

26. "May it seem fit to the Great Ruler of *all* Councils that our future rivalry may be only in works of peace, in the increase and happiness of our people. Even now, while a degree of mutual irritation and distrust exists, I earnestly breathe a wish, express a hope, ay! announce a faith—that the bright day, which philanthropists have dreamt of, poets seen in the vision of fancy, and the inspired page of prophecy foretold, is not far distant; when the spread of enlightenment, civilization and, above all, Christianity, among the nations of the earth, will do away for ever with the stern and terrible necessity of the sword; when the dazzling light, which fame now throws upon the names of those who direct victorious armies, may be looked upon but as a false meteor, their records known only as a memory of a by-gone and mistaken glory."

Questions on Part III.—Chapter 3.

What are the divisions of this Chapter?

I.—1. How did the news from Lower Canada affect the Upper Province? What disloyal meeting took place?

2. What did it send forth? Give an account of the liberal promise made. Give an account of the cheap Government. Give an account of the roads. What is said of this undertaking?

3. What is said of the conduct of Sir Francis Bond Head? Give an account of his plan.

4. What is said of the first out-break? Where did their leaders induce them to meet? What was their first aggression?

4. Who was their first victim? What is Mackenzie reported to have said?

6. By whom was the advance guard met? What happened to them? What is said of Alderman Powell? How did the alarm affect the insurgents?

7. In what manner was the night passed? What happened?

8. What is said of the inhabitants of Toronto? What is said of the British Canadians? Give an account of the Governor's proceedings. How were the Loyalists provided with arms? How were their numbers increased?

9. What is said of the Loyalists? What is said of the embassy sent by Sir Francis? Repeat Mackenzie's answer. What did he add to this speech? Repeat the answer of Sir Francis.

10. Describe the Loyalists. What was their success? What became of Mackenzie? What became of the others? What became of the tavern? What became of the prisoners? What is said of the loss of life?

11. Give an account of the influx of volunteers. Who came to the rescue? What is said of the general order to the militia? What is said of the prisoners? What is said of restoration of tranquillity?

12. Whither did Mackenzie go? What was his success? How did they arm themselves? How were numbers tempted to join the Patriots? What were the volunteers promised? Why did they call themselves Patriots? What might have ensued from their inroads?

13. Who commanded this enterprise? Whence was it supported? Who chose to patronize the Patriots? What is said of the artillery? What reward was offered? How was it to be paid?

14. What preparations were made for defence? What orders were given? Where was the Caroline lying? For what purpose was the party dispatched? Were they successful? How was this news received in the States?
15. When did they leave the island?
16. Where did the Patriots next appear? How did they behave? Give an account of their proceedings at Detroit.
17. Where did they next appear? What position did Colonel Maitland take? What ensued? How did they proceed? Who were the chief leaders in these forays?
18. What announcement was made by Sir Francis? What is said of his farewell speech? What is said of his character? In what light is his conduct viewed by his friends? In what light is his conduct viewed by his enemies? How was the country preserved? What is said of Sir George Arthur?

II.—1. When did Lord Durham arrive? Mention some of his first acts. What kind of Council was he to form? How was he to use them?
2. What is said of the Patriots? What is said of the destruction of the Sir Robert Peel? What is said of Lord Durham? Was Johnson taken? Where did he take refuge? In what manner did they evade justice?
3. What did Lord Durham find it necessary to do? Whither did he send them? What is said of this measure?
4. What is said of Lord Durham's tour? What is said of the mass of information regarding Canada?
5. Did Lord Durham remain here long? Why did he return Home, and when did he arrive in England?
6. Why were arrests made?

III.—1. When was this rising to take place? What prevented it? What took place at Beauharnois? What is said of Mr. Ellice? What is said of Mrs. Ellice?
2. What event took place at Caughnawaga? In what manner did the Chief act? What was the result? What is said of these Indians? What is said of their Chiefs?
3. Where did the insurgents assemble, and who was sent to meet them? What did they find on their arrival? Who took Beauharnois?
4. For what purpose had a party been detached? Who met them? What did the victors then do?
5. Whom did the insurgents release? How had they been treated? What remark is made upon the Canadians? How soon did this insurrection end?
6. By whom were the insurgents supported? What existed along the frontier?

7. Give an account of the attack at Prescott. By whom were they opposed? Where did several of them take refuge? What was found necessary? How did this end? Whither were the prisoners taken?
8. Give an account of the invasion at Sandwich? What was the fate of Dr. Hume?
9. By whom were they attacked? What was judged necessary? Who had invaded the Niagara frontier? What was the result?
10. How many were executed? Who was Von Schoultz? How did he behave? How were the offenders treated by the Government? What may have occurred?
11. What cannot be denied? What should be the future rivalry of the people of all origins?
12. What ensued? What measure was recommended? Was it adopted?
13. For what purpose was a Bill passed? Why was this done? Who was appointed to the office of Governor General? What proposition did he make? Was it agreed to? When did it take place?
14. Of what does the Legislature consist? By whom are the Legislative Counsel chosen? What is said of the Legislative Assembly? What is the qualification necessary for voters? Of what does the Executive Council consist?
15. To what date is it intended to bring this history? What is added?
16. How did the election terminate? What was the fate of Lord Sydenham? By whom was Lord Sydenham succeeded?
17. When did Lord Metcalfe arrive? What is said of his government of Jamaica? Why did he return Home? By whom was he succeeded? Who succeeded Earl Cathcart?
18. Under what circumstances did his government commence? What threw mercantile affairs into the greatest confusion? What was the natural result?
19. What bill, introduced by the Ministry, became law? Describe the destruction in connection with the burning of the St. Ann's Market or Parliament Buildings. What change as to the Seat of Government has taken place?
20. Describe one of the most important enterprises auguring the future prosperity of Canada. Describe its present prosperity and future prospects.
21. Describe the present state and future prospects of education in Lower Canada, in relation to Upper Canada and the United States?

22. What was the population of Upper Canada in 1841 and 1851? What was the population of Lower Canada in 1844 and 1851? At what may its present population be safely assumed? Mention one evidence among many of the present prosperity of the Province.
23. Account for the greater increase of population in Upper Canada than in the Lower Province. How may we hope to see this objection removed?
24. What does this author say of the present state of Canada? To what degree of maturity has it now arrived? Is it fair to compare it with the States? What is said of the progress made in the last few years?
25. Repeat his prayer. What does he announce? What does he anticipate? How does he regard the path of the warrior?

PART IV.

GEOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION OF CANADA.

CHAPTER I.

CONTENTS.

Extent of British America—Canada—its Boundaries—Mountains—Inland Waters—Lake Superior—the Pictured Rocks—the Cascade—the Copper Mines—St. Mary's Channel—Lake Huron—Indians of Manitoulin Island.

1. BRITISH AMERICA STRETCHES ACROSS THE WESTERN CONTINENT FROM THE ATLANTIC TO THE PACIFIC OCEAN.—It forms a region of immense extent, embracing considerably more than a third part of the whole Continent. A great portion of this vast space wears an aspect peculiarly gloomy, being buried the greater part of the year under snow, and producing nothing valuable except the skins and furs of the wild animals that roam over its surface.

2. Many of these outer tracts are indeed unknown to Britain herself. The smaller and more important part, which has been reduced into Provinces, and is gradually falling into cultivation, is, however, rising into notice. These Provinces are of two classes—first, the Inland Portions, watered only by great lakes and rivers, and,

secondly, the Maritime Provinces. Canada belongs to the first class, and is more extensive, more productive and more populous than all the Maritime Provinces united ; it is also the principal resort of Emigrants from the Mother Country.

3. Canada proper extends from Gaspé in the Gulf of St. Lawrence in the east to Sandwich at the end of Lake Erie in the west, a distance of about eleven hundred miles. Throughout this whole length its shores are washed to the west by Lake Huron, to the south-east by Lakes Erie and Ontario and the St. Lawrence as far as to the boundary of the forty-fifth parallel of latitude. After passing this boundary the great river flows through the centre of the Province to the Sea.

4. Canada is bounded on the north by the Hudson's Bay Territory ; on the east, by Labrador, the Gulf of St. Lawrence and New Brunswick ; on the south, by the United States until the line strikes the St. Lawrence at St. Regis in latitude 45° and longitude 72° 40' west, about seventy-five miles above Montreal. From that point the rivers and lakes divide the British Territories from the United States. The line passes through the St. Lawrence and Lake Ontario up the Niagara river, which it follows as far as to Lake Erie. After passing through Lake Erie it enters the Detroit river and Lake St. Clair, it then passes through the St. Clair river to Lake Huron, and finally through the St. Mary's river to Lake Superior. The western limit is very vague ; but usage does not extend it farther than this lake. Canada may therefore be de-

scribed as lying between the meridians at 57° 50′ and 90° west, and the parallels of 42° and 52° north, being about thirteen hundred miles from east to west, and seven hundred from north to south. The area is estimated at three hundred and forty-eight thousand square miles.

5. This Province, as has been mentioned in a former part of this work, derives its name from the Iroquois word *Kanata*, which signifies a collection of huts, which the early settlers caught from the natives, and mistook for the name of the country. The opinion is strengthened by the fact that the well known Indian Chief Brant, in his translation of the Gospel of St. Matthew, always uses the world Canada to signify a village.

6. Extensive as this Province may now be, it is yet very different indeed from what it originally was. In the reign of George III. it included a great extent of what is now New England, and the whole of the country between the State of Pennsylvania, the river Ohio, and the Mississippi north to the Hudson's Bay Territory, where now a great portion of the rich and flourishing Western States adds their strength to the neighbouring republic. By gradual encroachments on one hand and concessions on the other, by the misconstruction of treaties and the division of boundaries, have these vast and valuable tracts of country been separated from the British Empire.

7. Canada consists of a very extensive plain, situated between two ranges of high hills, one on the north, the other on the south. The most valuable portions of it are the grounds that stretch along the borders of the St.

Lawrence and the Lakes. Some of the Mountains on the North Shore are upwards of two thousand feet high, as are also some of those in Gaspé and the Eastern Townships. Both in the upper part of the Quebec District, and in Gaspé, the hills press on the banks of the river, giving to it an air of much grandeur . Higher up they recede, and form on either side a gradually widening and beautiful plain, susceptible of the most perfect cultivation. In the upper part of the country this level tract attains a very great breadth, and partly includes the basin of the noble stream of the Ottawa. In the west it appears to terminate with Lake Huron, for the northern sheet of that fine piece of water, as well as of Lake Superior, is flanked by mountains.

8. The most striking peculiarty of this noble region is its waters, particularly its immense lakes, which, in respect to depth and extent of surface, have no equal on the face of the Earth. The Caspian Sea certainly exceeds the largest of those lakes separately considered, but that great body of salt has no outlet, whereas the Canadian Lakes supply without apparent diminution the vast stream of the St. Lawrence.

9. Lake Superior is the largest of these inland seas, and indeed the most extensive body of fresh water in the World. Its form is that of an irregular crescent, and its length is estimated at three hundred and sixty geographical miles. Its surface appears to be one hundred and twenty-seven feet above the level of the Atlantic, and its shores afford indications of its having once been forty or

fifty feet higher. The bottom of its basin is supposed to be five hundred feet below the surface of the Atlantic. In violent gales the waves rise nearly as high as those of the Ocean; and, though there are no tides, the wind, when it blows strongly from any point, throws the water with great force on the opposite shore.

10. It is remarkable that, while every other large lake is fed by rivers of the first order, this, the most capacious on the face of the Globe, does not receive a third or even a fourth rate stream. The St. Louis, the most considerable, has a course of not more than one hundred and fifty miles. This deficiency is, however, amply supplied by not less than two hundred and twenty tributary rivers and streams, which pour in their waters from the surrounding mountains.

11. There are several remarkable things connected with Lake Superior. Its waters are so perfectly transparent that they render the rocks, even at extraordinary depths, distinctly visible, which is caused by the mud and sand having time to subside. The temperature of summer is never gained by these waters; for, if in July a bottle be sunk to the depth of one hundred feet and there filled and then brought up to the surface, its contents are found to be like ice-water.

12. On the south side of the Lake are the Pictured Rocks, which are immense cliffs rising to an elevation of three hundred feet above its level, and stretching along its coast for fifteen miles. They are called the Pictured Rocks in consequence of the different appearances which

they present to the traveler as he passes their base in his canoe. It requires but little aid from the imagination to discern in them castellated towers, lofty domes and spires, pinnacles, and every grotesque or sublime shape which the genius of architecture ever invented. The *voyageurs* never pass this coast except in the most profound calm; and the Indians, before they make the attempt, offer their accustomed oblations to propitiate the favour of their Manitou or Guardian Spirit.

13. The Cascade of La Portaille and the Doric Arch are two remarkable objects on this shore. The Cascade consists of a considerable stream precipitated from a height of seventy feet by a single leap into the Lake to such a distance that a boat may pass between the fall and the rock perfectly dry. This immense wall of rock is of sandstone, and is worn away by the continual action of the water, which has undermined every projecting point to such a degree that this lofty precipice rests upon arches and is intersected by caverns in every direction. Through these caverns the wind rushes with a sound as melancholy and as awful as any which ever vibrated upon the human ear.

14. The Doric Arch has all the appearance of a work of art, and consists of an insolated mass of sandstone with four pillars supporting an entablature of stone, covered with soil, on which grows a beautiful grove of pine and spruce-trees, some of them sixty feet in height. While viewing these wonders of nature, a sense of insecurity attends you, as a sudden storm upon the Lake would as

inevitably cause the destruction of your frail canoe as if it were on the brink of the cataract of Niagara.

15. A young lady, who crossed Lake Superior a few years since in a canoe, described her sensations to the writer as being very peculiar. Seated at the bottom of the canoe which was covered with nice soft skins, and accompanied by only two persons, the lady and gentleman to whose house she was going, she felt like a bird floating along through space, as under the direction of their Indian guide they glided over the Lake. The water was so remarkably transparent that, when she looked over the side of the frail bark to the rocks and stones and long tangling weeds in the depth below, all idea of water vanished, and she seemed to be buoyant in the air.

16. The tributary rivers and streams, though not large, pour into the Lake a great volume of water than what forms its exit at the only outlet, the Falls of St. Mary's. This is generally thought to be caused by the immense evaporation continually going on, and which would be much greater were it not for the dense covering of wood and the long continuance of frost in this region. The vast copper mines lately discovered here, and which promise to become a source of wealth both to the United States and Canada, render this portion of our country peculiarily interesting at this time.

17. The surplus waters of Lake Superior enter, near its south-eastern extremity, into St. Mary's Channel, by which they are transmitted to Lake Huron, more than forty miles distant. About midway are St. Mary's Falls, where the current forces its way through broken rock

with a tremendous noise. The swift-flowing billows and whitened waters are hurried with velocity over a slope of huge boulder stones through a thickly wooded country, whose want of elevation on either side has permitted the formation of a number of islets, divided by channels, which are narrow on the left but widen on the right bank. Its bed is from one mile to one mile and a half wide. These rapids cannot be ascended, but canoes, though with great danger, sometimes shoot downwards. A schooner, belonging to the North West Company, sometime ago came down in safety, which is the first instance of a passage being accomplished by a vessel of any considerable size. This passage may be avoided by a *portage* of about two miles, over which the Indians carry the canoes and launch them into Lake Huron.

18. This Lake may be said to have three sides—two belonging to Canada and the third to the United States. Its extreme length is about two hundred and forty miles, its breadth not less than two hundred and twenty miles, and its circumference is supposed to be nearly one thousand. Its surface is only thirty-two feet lower than that of Lake Superior, and it is equally distinguished by the brilliancy of its waters and its extraordinary depth, estimated at nine hundred or one thousand feet. Lake Huron is the second in succession, as well as in magnitude, of this great chain of lakes. A range of islands runs parallel with its northern shore, and with the peninsula of Cabot separates almost completely the upper part from the main, so that it was considered by the earlier discov-

erers as a distinct basin. Among these islands the chief is the Great Manitoulin or Sacred Isle, which is viewed by the Indians with peculiar awe as the abode of the Great Spirit. It is seventy-five miles long, and in some places twenty-five miles broad. The two islets of St. Joseph and Drummond are fortified as frontier stations, the former by Britain, the latter by the United States.

19. The principal British naval station on Lake Huron is Penetanguishine in Georgian Bay. It is sheltered by hills of sand and rolled blocks, bearing evidence of the "war of waters" when this fine country was covered with the inland sea, upon the surface of which only occasional tops of mountains and lines of rocky ridges were to be seen, like islands studding the vast expanse.

20. The Islands of La Cloche form a charming contrast to the bleak hills on the northern shore, which rise one thousand feet above the level of the Lake. The name of La Cloche is derived from the belief that some of the Islands are composed of dark rocks, which, when struck, sound like a bell.

21. Near its north-western point a narrow strait connects it with Lake Michigan, which is entirely included within the United States' boundary. The view into this Lake from Michillimackinac Isle, which lies in the strait of that name, is peculiarly pleasing; the pretty hamlet of St. Ignace, the high white cliffs contrasted with the foliage around, and the blue light streaming through the sound from the vast Lake beyond, offers a rich treat for lovers of natural scenery.

22. We hope our readers have not forgotten that it was in the neighbourhood of Lake Huron that Champlain passed a winter with the Indians. They were then a warlike and powerful race, "sovereigns of the land and of the Lake." Now, however, it is very different; the natives of the soil are scattered and weakened, their numbers diminished, and their power extinguished. The Government, however, and others are trying to give them the benefits of civilization, and to convert them to Christianity; and, though it must be owned that the Indians are less picturesque in civilized than in savage life, we must rejoice at the changes taking place among them.

23. Previously to 1829 a distribution of presents used to take place to the Western Indians at Drummond's Island. These visiting Indians came from the north of Penetanguishine, from Sault Ste. Marie and the shores of Lake Superior, from the south-west and Lake Michigan, Green Bay, the Fox River, Wisconsin, and even from the distant Mississippi. In 1829, however, Drummond's Island being finally ceded to the Americans, and the British Government being desirous of ascertaining the disposition of the Indians to embrace civilization, the distribution of presents was made first at St. Joseph's Island, and afterwards at Penetanguishine. In the spring of 1835 the Government determined to settle the Indians on Manitoulin Island, consisting of five or six families of the Ottawa tribe, who had settled at Wequamekong Bay. These with a few Chippewas amounted to seventy or eighty persons. In 1836 the present settlement at

Manitowaning was commenced. When the first issue of presents took place, it was attended by twenty-six hundred and ninety-seven individuals. Sir Francis Head was present, and formed the idea of collecting at Manitoulin not only the wild Indians from the North of Lake Huron, as had at first been proposed, but all those who had settled or were wandering among the white population in various parts of Upper Canada. This design, however, does not seem to be approved of by the settled Indians. Those who have accepted the offers made them by the Government are chiefly belonging to the Ottawa and Chippewa tribes.

24. There is a decided difference between these tribes. The Ottawas, who emigrated from the United States, have been all their lives Indian farmers, and immediately began to cultivate the soil, and cure the fish for winter's use, so that it was not necessary for them to leave their homes in search of food. The Chippewas on the contrary, who had never, until collected at Manitoulin, cultivated the soil, were slow in adopting a new mode of life. For some time they were reluctant to remain in a fixed place of residence ; they frequently shifted their camps, and it required much persuasion to induce them to join the settlements.

25. In the village of Wequamekong there are now seventy-eight buildings, a church, a school-house and a saw-mill. The Ottawas have long been converted to the Roman Catholic religion, and have a priest residing with them, who appears to have the entire control. The Mani-

towawning village contains fifty-five buildings, a school-house, saw-mill, large store, and Protestant church. The population of the Island is about seven hundred.

26. The men now do most of the chopping; but after that the women still take a full share of the labours of the field. Their fondness for hunting and fishing is diminished, so that they seldom leave the Island for either purpose. They are more regular in their habits, dress more like white people, wash their hands and faces daily, and appear to be influenced by the instructions they receive. They attend public worship regularly, their moral habits are improved, and they do not talk of their ancient mode of cruel warfare with the same delight as formerly. In fact the changes, which have taken place here and elsewhere, would have delighted the heart of Champlain, if he had lived to witness them, for I hope you have not forgotten the memorable saying of this excellent man, "That the conversion of one soul was of more value than the conquest of an empire."

Questions on Part IV.—Chapter 1.

1. How far does British America extend? How much of the Continent does it embrace? What is said of a great portion of this space?
2. What parts of British America are rising into notice? How are these Provinces divided? What is said of Canada?
3. What is the extent of Canada? By what waters are its shores washed? How does the St. Lawrence flow after passing the boundary?
4. How is Canada bounded on the north? How on the east? How on the south? What then divides these countries? Where does

the line then pass ? After leaving Lake Erie ? What is said of the western limit of Canada ? Where then does Canada lie ? How is the area estimated ?

5. What is the derivation of the word Canada ? How was it adopted ? Mention a corroborative proof.
6. What is said of Canada in regard to its present size ? How far did it extend in the reign of George III. ? By what means has it passed from us ?
7. Of what does Canada now consist ? Which portions are the most valuable ? What is said of the mountains ? Do they approach the shore ? As they recede what is found ? What does this level tract include ? How does it terminate on the west ?
8. What is the chief peculiarity of region ? What is said of the Caspian Sea ? What is said of the Canadian Lakes ?
9. Which is the largest of those Canadian Lakes ? Describe Lake Superior. What is its height ? What is its depth ? What is said of its waves ?
10. Relate a remarkable circumstance connected with this Lake. What is the length of the St. Louis ? How is this want supplied ?
11. What is said of the waters of Lake Superior ? How is this caused ? What is remarkable in regard to the temperature in summer ?
12. Describe the Pictured Rocks. Whence do they derive their name ? What do they resemble ? What is said of the *voyageurs*, and of the Indians ?
13. Name other two remarkable objects. Describe the Cascade. What has the action of the water formed ? What is heard from these caverns ?
14. Of what does the Doric Arch consist ? With what feeling are those wonders viewed, and why ?
15. What is said of a young lady who crossed Lake Superior ? By whom was she accompanied, and how did she feel ? What effects did the transparency of the water produce ?
16. What is said of the rivers and streams ? How is this accounted for ? Why is Lake Superior peculiarly interesting at present ?
17. Into what Channel do the surplus waters of this Lake enter ? Where are St. Mary's Falls ? Describe its progress, and the country through which it passes ? How wide is its bed ? Can these rapids be ascended ? What vessel lately came down them ? How may this be avoided ?
18. What may be said of Lake Huron ? What are its length, breadth and circumference ? State its elevation and its depth. What is said of this Lake ? How was part of the Lake formerly re-

garded? What is said of the "Sacred Isle?" What is its size? What frontier stations are mentioned?

19. Where is the chief British naval station? What appearance does this region present?
20. What is said of the Islands of La Cloche and the northern hills? Whence is the name derived?
21. How is Lake Huron connected with Lake Michigan? What is said of the view into Lake Michigan? Describe it.
22. Which of the French discoverers passed a winter here? What were they then? In what state are they now? What is said of the efforts now making? How ought they to be regarded?
23. What used to take place at Drummond Island? From what places did the visiting Indians come? What is said of the British Government? In what state was the Indian settlement found? When was the present settlement commenced? What is said of the distribution of 1836? What plan was formed by Sir Francis Head? Did this meet the approbation of the Indians? To what tribe do the settlers belong?
24. What is said of the Ottawas? What is said of the Chippewas? How did they conduct themselves?
25. What is said of Wequamekong? Of what religion are the Ottawas? What is said of Manitowawning? State the amount of the population.
26. Do the women still labour in the fields? What changes have been effected? What in their habits? What in their morals and opinion? What is said in conclusion?

CHAPTER II.

CONTENTS.

Lake Huron—The Huron District—The Chippewas of Saugeen—Lake St. Clair—Indian Settlements at the St. Clair Rapids and Walpole Island—Lake Erie—French Settlement on the Detroit—Indian Settlement near Amherstburgh—Ports on Lake Erie—Grand River—Niagara River—Falls of Niagara—Queenston—Lewiston—Forts on the Niagara.

1. There is nothing worthy of remark on the south-west or American shore of Lake Huron. The eastern

side on the contrary forms one of the finest portions of America. On this elevated shore is situated the noble tract, termed the Huron District, belonging to the Canada Company. It is of a triangular form, commencing in latitude 43° 5' north and extending about sixty miles. The whole of the land is very fertile with an undulating surface. It is watered by numberless streams, insomuch that in the tract to the southward of Goderich, in a distance of thirty miles, eighty-seven rivers, rivulets and brooks fall into Lake Huron, or nearly three to a mile.

2. The principal rivers are the Maitland, formerly called the Menesetuagh, an Indian word said to mean "The Wide-mouthed River," the Albert, the Bayfield, the Aux Sables, so named from the sandy plains through which it passes, the Avon, and the Thames, which with its numerous tributaries unite in one stream in the township of London, and join the main river Thames at the Town of London. The Nith, which rises in an extensive swamp of about thirty miles in length in the north-eastern part of the district, runs in a south-east direction, and, after passing through Ellice, Easthope, Wilmot, Waterloo and Dumfries, joins the Grand River or Ouse at Paris near Brantford.

3. There is reason to believe that this tract of land was under water at no very distant period. There are ridges of gravel and stone rolled till rounded in water, running from south-west to north-east in every direction, showing that the waters have receded and left these dry. There is one peculiarity in the Huron District; the large swamp,

already alluded to, exists on the very highest land in the District, and feeds most of the rivers in it before mentioned. It must be five hundred feet above the level of the Lake, and consequently nearly twelve hundred feet above the level of the Sea.

4. A phenomenon, which has puzzled philosophers, is easily comprehended in a walk along the shores of Lake Huron. In many parts of Canada and the United States long sand-bars are formed across the mouths of rivers and deep bays. This is observable prominently at Aux Sables, which runs parallel to Lake Huron for eleven miles, the space between being filled up by a sand-bar formed by the river; at Long Point too, and at Erie (formerly Presqu'Isle) on Lake Erie, and at Burlington Bay and Toronto on Lake Ontario. This arises from the prevalent wind being from north-west, which inclines the stream at the mouth of rivers in that direction; and, where the waves of the Lake are neutralized by the force of the stream, the mud or sand contained in both naturally deposits itself in the still water.

5. The population of Huron is increasing amazingly. In 1830 it was a wilderness; in 1841 it contained 5,100; in 1842, 7,300; in 1843, 11,400; 1844, 14,000; this year the population amounts to nearly 20,000. Goderich, the capital of the District, contains upwards of 1500 inhabitants. It is beautifully situated on a steep bank, one hundred and thirty feet high, looking down on Lake Huron and the confluence of the Maitland, It has five churches of different denominations, a Court-

house, stores, and inns, and possesses an excellent harbour.

6. When Sir Francis Head obtained from the Chippewas of Saugeen, Lake Huron, the surrender of the large tract of land lying north of the Gore and London Districts, he reserved for their use the extensive peninsula lying between the Huron Tract and Georgian Bay, north of Owen's Sound, and supposed to contain about 450,000 acres. These Chippewas have been settled and converted to Christianity since 1831, and give satisfactory proof of their desire for civilization and improvement. A Missionary, who is an Indian brought up at the Rice Lake Mission, is settled amongst them. They have a chapel and a mission-house, which were built by the Wesleyan Methodist Society.

7. This mission is beautifully situated, and fine flats extend along the river, where the Indians cut sufficient hay for their oxen and cows, and grow excellent corn. The mouth of the Saugeen River forms the best and almost only port of refuge on the eastern shore of Lake Huron. Hence it is likely to become a place of considerable resort. These Indians are entitled to share in the annuity of £1250 recently granted in exchange for the Saugeen Territory. They have been remarkable for their steadfastness since they embraced Christianity. They appear to be a happy people, much attached to their Missionary, are teachable, and give solid proofs that they are progressing in civilization. They are about two hundred in number. There is another settlement of

Chippewas at Beausoleil Island, Lake Huron, rather larger and chiefly Roman Catholic; and a third at Big Bay, Owen's Sound, of about one hundred and thirty. This is also a Mission station of the Wesleyan Methodists, whose zeal in this good work cannot be too highly spoken of.

8. Lake Huron pours out its surplus waters at its southern extremity, thus carrying in that direction the great chain of communication by the river St. Clair. This expands into Lake St. Clair, about twenty-six miles long, and nearly the same in breadth. Its shores are as yet not well settled. There is, however, a settlement of Chippewas and Pottawatamies on the St. Clair Rapids, consisting of nearly eight hundred persons. Previously to 1830 they were wandering hunters, scattered over the western part of the Province. Sir John Colborne first endeavoured to settle and civilize them. They are now converted to Christianity, and are acquiring sober, orderly and industrious habits. Generally they belong to the Methodist Wesleyans and the Church of England, but there are a few Roman Catholics amongst them. A party residing at Kettle Point are still heathens.

9. Another Indian settlement at Walpole Island, which lies at the junction of the River and Lake St. Clair, was commenced by Colonel M'Kee, to whom the Indians gave the name of White Elk. At the close of the war he collected the scattered remains of some tribes of Chippewas, who had engaged on the British side; and several bands of Pottawatamies and Ottawas have joined

them since 1836, in consequence of the Proclamation then issued. They are all heathens except about twenty families, who have a Missionary, belonging to the Church of England, settled over them. Since the death of their old Chief the aversion of these Indians to become Christians has been much diminished. In 1842 their number amounted to 1140.

10. Lake St. Clair receives several rivers, the principal of which, the Thames, winds for more than one hundred miles. On its banks are situated London, Chatham and several other towns, which are rapidly rising into importance. From Lake St. Clair issues the Detroit, a spacious stream celebrated for the beauty and fertility of the surrounding country. Both the River and the Lake are, however, extremely shallow.

11. After running twenty-six miles the Detroit opens into the grand expanse of Lake Erie. It is about two hundred and forty-four miles long, and at its centre fifty-eight miles broad, its circumference being estimated at somewhat less than six hundred and fifty-eight miles. The surface is said to be five hundred and sixty-five feet above the level of the Ocean, making it thirty feet lower than Lake Huron. The depth seldom amounts to more than two hundred and seventy feet, and the difficulties of the navigation are increased by the projecting promontories, which render a frequent change of course necessary. There has hitherto been on the Canadian side a great want of harbours; but several are now being formed or improved by the Government. At the Rondeau, Port

Stanley, Port Maitland and Port Colborne expensive and important works are in progress, which will greatly benefit this part of the country.

12. Lake Erie is said to be filling up by deposites carried down by the rivers. Its shallowness can be accounted for in no other way, as it receives through the Detroit the surplus waters of Lakes St. Clair, Huron, Michigan and Superior.

13. This Lake may be considered as a central reservoir, from which open in all directions the most extensive channels of inland communication in the World. The coasts are almost equally divided between the British and Americans, and are very fertile and pleasing. The great canals leading from it to the Hudson on the one side, and to the Ohio on the other, render it a medium of communication between the Atlantic, the Mississippi and the Gulf of Mexico. The Welland Canal on the Canadian side, which joins it to Lake Ontario, forms a channel by which in its enlarged state a considerable portion of the produce of the Lake countries will be transmitted. The Government improvements on this and the other canals are on so noble a scale that vessels from Huron, Michigan, Erie or Ontario, drawing nine feet of water, may now pass to the Ocean through the St. Lawrence. Lake Erie is the most dangerous of the Lakes to cross, as it is very subject to thunder storms and sudden gusts of wind, which render its navigation at all times extremely insecure.

14. One of the first settlements in Canada was made on the Detroit River by a few French families, whose

descendants are still to be found on its banks, retaining the manners and habits of their ancestors.. It bears a striking resemblance of Lower Canada. For twenty or thirty miles are to be seen the village form of a settlement, the long-robed priest, the decent church, and the kind and civil *habitant*. The country around is extremely picturesque, the banks high and cultivated, and the eye everywhere rests upon fertile fields, well stocked gardens and orchards, extensive *granges* or barns, and neat farmhouses. Its climate is delightful, and all kinds of grain, the finest grapes, peaches, nectarines, apples and pears grow in profusion.

15. Sandwich and Amherstburg are the principal places on the Canadian side. The city of Detroit on the opposite bank belongs to the United States. From the Detroit River the northern shore of the Lake is of a bolder character than the American, the banks rising sometimes to the height of one hundred feet perpendicular.

16. Pointe Pelée is the southernmost point of Canada; the next is Pointe aux Pins, from the harbour near it called the Rondeau. There is a westerly route across the country to Chatham on the Thames. It is expected that, when completed, this route will be generally used by the Americans, because much dangerous navigation will be avoided, and the distance between Buffalo and Detroit will be considerably lessened.

17. Near Amherstburg and Pointe Pelée there is an Indian settlement, consisting of about four hundred Chippewas, Hurons, Munsees and Shawnees. The Chippewas

are still heathens, and live in wigwams, subsisting chiefly by hunting, and making their women perform all the field work.

18. Port Talbot is about equi-distant from the Niagara and Detroit. This extensive and fine settlement was made in 1802 by Colonel Talbot, who, after encountering very great difficulties, succeeded in laying out and opening roads, extending for about forty miles parallel to the Lake. The whole is now densely filled with inhabitants. Between Port Talbot and the Grand River lies a long peninsula, called Long Point. It is a very fine and well settled country, stretching eastward into the Lake for about twenty miles, and forming a bay on its north-eastern shore.

19. The lands lying at the mouth of the Grand River are low and unhealthy, but, higher up, it runs through a country scarcely to be equaled in salubrity and loveliness. The whole of Oxford and Middlesex counties is rich and fertile and thickly populated. London on the Thames is the principal place. There is an old and extensive settlement on the Thames. In 1792 the remnant of the Delaware Indians, Moravian Congregations of the United States, was compelled to seek an asylum in Upper Canada, and was permitted to settle on the River La Tranche, now the Thames.

20. The first settlement having been entirely destroyed by the invading American army in 1812, a new one was formed where the Indians were again collected. They now live together in a place called the Moravian Village, and belong to the Church of the United Brethren. The

Chippewas and Munsees occupy a tract of land twenty-five miles from the Moravian Village. There are also Oneidas and Pottawatamies, who are still heathens. The converted Chippewas and Munsees belong to the Church of England and Wesleyan Methodists. The whole of the settlements on the Thames contain about twelve hundred persons.

21. Upon one of the branches of the Grand River, called the Speed, is situated the town of Guelph. It is nearly one hundred miles distant from Lake Erie, and is one of the most flourishing towns settled by the Canada Company. Galt is another very pretty and neat place, called after the author of "Lawrie Todd." Indeed the whole country in that direction is so fruitful and desirable that it must attract settlers.

22. Western Canada forms one of the finest portions of British America. When it shall be better cultivated, and the marshy grounds sufficiently drained to banish from them the fever and ague, the whole of these Western Districts will become a perfect garden. The climate is exceedingly delightful; indeed the whole of the Gore District, the Huron Tract, and part of the London District, are remarkably healthful. It is in the low, flat, undrained grounds alone that ague exists.

23. Near Brantford, which is a very pretty town on the Grand River, is the settlement belonging to the Six Nations, formerly called the Iroquois, one of the most interesting in Canada. At the termination of the War of Independence the Six Nations Indians of the Mohawk Val-

ley, who had taken part with the British against the Americans, became apprehensive that injurious consequences might result from their hunting-grounds being within the territory assigned to the United States. They accordingly in 1783 deputed their celebrated chief, Captain Joseph Brant (Tyendenaga), to represent their fears to the British Government; and next year a grant was made to them for ever of the fine and fertile tract of land on the Grand River.

24. The community consists not only of the Six Nations, but includes some Delawares, Tutulies, Muntures, Nuntieokes, and some other Indians, together with a few families of negroes, adopted into the nation; their number in 1843 was 2,223. The Mohawks had been Christians for many years before the American revolution. A considerable number of the Cayugas, Onandagos, Senecas, and some of the Delawares, are still heathens. The great majority of the Indians on the Grand River are Christians, and mostly belong to the Church of England. Their church service is very interesting, and their singing delightful.

25. The Welland Canal leaves Lake Erie at Port Colborne in the Township of Humberton. A branch, or feeder for it, commences at Dunnville, a short distance from the mouth of the Grand River. The American shore of Lake Erie has the advantage of possessing several good harbours, namely, Sandusky, Cleveland, Erie and Buffalo. At present we are deficient; but in another year the munificence of the Government will enable us to reap

the benefits desirable from this most fertile and beautiful region.

26. During the war we were singularly unfortunate on Lake Erie, where a battle was fought between the English squadron, carrying sixty-three guns, and the American, carrying fifty-six guns, which terminated in the capture of our fleet. Indeed it was impossible for us to escape defeat; we had neither stores nor vessels, nor men at all fitted for the enterprise. Had it not been for the determined loyalty of the Canadians themselves, this fine country must then have been lost to England. It would doubtless have been re-conquered when the Mother Country could, by the cessation of war in the Old World, pay attention to so distant and so trifling a part of her possessions as this was then considered to be. We live in happier times; these shores, which were then a wilderness, are now the most populous and best settled portion of the Lake countries. The whole of the Lakes are now traversed by steam-vessels and schooners, which ply in every direction, and by connecting canals and rivers enable us to collect the products and luxuries of every clime.

27. "These Ocean Lakes,
Which in majestic indolence reposed,
Coquetting with the winds, or, mirror-like,
Giving to upper worlds a mimic sun,
Are now the path of white-winged fleets, which bear
The golden fruits of the rich harvest-fields
To far-off climes. The woodland shores—
The towering pine-tree—the stern-hearted oak—

Have owned the sway of man; and waving grain
Speaketh of home and plenty. Towering spires
Of Temples, dedicated to Him whose Word
Is life eternal, deck the verdant banks;
And grateful strains of gratitude are hymned
Amid the Sabbath stillness.

28. The direction of the great water communication, which from the head of Lake Huron has been nearly due south, here changes to the north-east till it opens into the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Opposite Fort Erie, where the Niagara river issues from the Lake, stands the fine American city of Buffalo. Here the grand canal commences, which connects Lake Erie with the Hudson, and consequently with the Atlantic.

29. The Niagara River is about thirty-three miles long, and traverses a beautiful country. At Fort Erie it is about a mile wide, but it soon contracts its bed to half a mile. The current here is extremely rapid, and offers a sublime prospect of the mighty mass of waters, rushing from the inland seas to join the Ocean.

30. The first vessel, that ever sailed on these western seas, was built on the Niagara River in 1579. She was dragged up into Lake Erie, and started on her bold adventure to follow the Mississippi down to the Sea under the guidance of La Salle, of whom you may remember reading in the History. They entered Lake Huron through the St. Clair River, and encountered a violent storm, which in these unknown waters appalled the hearts of La Salle and his sailors. They escaped this danger, however, and

passed into Lake Michigan, where, after sailing forty leagues, they landed on an island at the mouth of Green Bay. La Salle sent back the ship to Niagara, laden with rich and valuable furs, procured by trade with the Indians of the coast where they had touched in the voyage. The pilot and five men embarked in her, but they never reached the shore, and it is supposed that the vessel foundered in Lake Huron.

31. Following the River downwards, we come to Grand Island, belonging to the United States, a fine tract of land bearing splendid timber. Navy Island, the noted fortress of the Patriots in the late insurrection, lies near it, but is far inferior to it in size and in richness of soil. At Chippewa, nearly opposite to Navy Island, the Welland River flows into the Niagara. Below this the River expands into a kind of bay, and is more than two miles in breadth; it soon after contracts again suddenly to less than a mile, and then its current rapidly increases from three to eight miles. Farther down than this the Canadian boatmen with all their intrepidity dare not venture.

32. A distant noise is now heard, resembling the peculiar sound of the Ocean, and a column or cloud of mist is seen hovering over the rapid stream. Farther down the River bends to the east, and is divided by Goat Island, leaving however by far the greater body of water on the Canadian side. This rushes and foams furiously along among shoals and rocks, forming the rapids; no fall is yet visible, but the sound grows louder, and the banks begin to rise from the water.

33. Steam navigation ends at Chippewa. Whilst travelling over the few intervening miles before reaching the Falls, you can, by looking upwards, see the calm waters in the distance, whilst nearer they swell and foam and recoil, and seem to be gathering-up all their force for the mighty leap they are about to make. Mrs. Jamieson, when speaking of them, says in her own beautiful manner, "The whole mighty river comes rushing over the brow of a hill, and, as you look up at it, seems as if coming down to overwhelm you; then meeting with the rocks as it pours down the declivity, it boils and frets like the breakers of the Ocean. Huge mounds of water, smooth, transparent, and gleaming like an emerald, rise up and bound over some impediment, then break into silver foam, which leaps into the air in the most graceful and fantastic forms."

34. The Horse-Shoe or Canadian Fall is not quite circular, but is marked by projections and indentations which give amazing variety of form and action to the mighty torrent. There it falls in one dense mass of green water, calm, unbroken and resistless; here it is broken into drops, and falls like a shower of diamonds sparkling in the sun, and at times it is so light and foaming that it is driven up again by the currents of air, ascending from the deep below, where all is agitation and foam.

35. Goat Island, which divides and perhaps adds to the sublimity of the Falls, is three hundred and thirty yards wide, and covered with vegetation. The American Fall, which is formed by the east branch of the River, is smaller than the British, and at first sight has a plain and uniform

aspect. This, however, vanishes as you come near, and, though it does not subdue the mind as the Canadian one does, it fills you with a solemn and delightful sense of grandeur and simplicity. It falls upwards of two hundred feet, and is about twenty feet wide at the point of fall, spreading itself like a fan in falling.

35. An ingenious American has thrown a curious wooden bridge across this Fall to Goat Island, which you cross only a very few yards above the crest of the Cataract. Passing by it and crossing the island, you reach the extremity of the British Fall on its eastern side. Here a piece of timber projects about twelve feet over the abyss, on which you can stand safely and view the waters as they rush by, whilst the spray dashes over you, and your frail support quivers under your feet. Here you may follow the course of the waters as they roll from the rude confusion below you, and spread themselves out into bright, curling, foaming green and white waves. To some persons nothing at the Falls appears so beautiful as the columns of mist which soar from the foaming abyss, and shroud the broad front of the great flood, whilst here and there rainbows peep out from the mysterious curtain.

37. At the foot of the Canadian Fall there is a ledge of rock, which leads into a cavern behind the sheet of waters, called "the Cavern of the Winds." It is in the form of a pointed arch, the span on the left hand being composed of rolling and dark water, and that on the right of dark rocks. It is fifty or sixty feet large, and the obscurity that surrounds it, together with the strong wind

which blows the spray and water all over you, render this rather a difficult undertaking, especially for young persons.

38. Within a few minutes' walk of this lovely scene are to be found all the bustle and activity of life; on the American side hotels and mills of every description, and a busy town called Manchester, through which passes the railroad that connects it with Lockport and Buffalo. On the Canadian side too several mills are built on the side of the beautiful rapids, large and elegant hotels are erected, and a railroad is in operation from Chippewa to Queenston Heights.

39. A little below the Falls the Niagara resumes its usual soft and gentle beauty. The banks here are very high and beautifully wooded. In the vicinity may be seen the Suspension Bridge. Its span is 800 feet, height from the water 230 feet. About four miles below, the River has formed a circular excavation called "the Whirlpool." The rapid current here sweeps wildly past the sides of the high and perpendicular banks; and in its course the dead bodies or trees, that come within its reach, are carried with a quivering circular motion round and round this dismal spot. The rocks are steep, and no boat dares approach it, so that whatever gets into the current must there remain until decomposed, or broken to pieces by the action of the water. Having made this extraordinary circuit, the River regains its proper course and rushes between two precipices, which are not more than nine hundred feet apart.

40. Seven miles below the Falls, the country on the Canadian side suddenly rises into abrupt and elevated ridges, called Queenston Heights, and supposed to have been the banks of the River, and "the Place of the Falls" in former ages. During the war a large body of American troops was driven down this steep precipice and nearly all perished in the River. The monument erected to the memory of the brave General Brock, who fell here, lay in ruins till lately, having been blown up by one of the disaffected in 1838. A large sum of money has been expended in erecting another splendid monument to the memory of Brock. At the foot of the hill is Queenston, a romantic-looking village, where the Niagara again becomes navigable. On the American side, opposite to Queenston, stands the pretty town of Lewiston. A few miles below is Youngstown, an inconsiderable place; and at the mouth of the River is the quiet town of Niagara with its four thousand people. Fort Messassagua guards the River on the Canadian side, and on the opposite shore the Americans have a strong fort, called Fort Niagara. The banks of this River are very pleasing, and the water of a peculiarly beautiful colour.

Questions on Part IV.—Chapter 2.

1. What is said of the shores of Lake Huron? What is said of the Huron Tract? Describe it. How is it watered?
2. What was the Indian name of the Maitland? Mention the names of the other rivers. Where does the Nith rise? Where does it join the Grand River?

3. What is said of this tract of land? What appearances does it present? Mention a peculiarity which exists here. How high is it?
4. What may be comprehended in a walk on the shores of Lake Huron? Where is this observable? Where else does this appearance present itself? How is this caused? What is the consequence?
5. What was the Huron District in 1830? Estimate its present population. Describe Goderich.
6. When the Saugeen Territory was surrendered, what portion was reserved for the Indians? How long have they been christianized? Who is their minister? What do they possess?
7. Describe the situation of this mission. What does the Saugeen river offer? What annuity do these Indians share? For what have they been remarkable? Are they improving? Where are the other Chippewa settlements?
8. By what river does Lake Huron discharge its waters? Into what does this expand? What is said of another Indian settlement? In what condition were these previously to 1830? To what churches do they belong?
9. By whom was the settlement at Walpole Island commenced? To what tribe do they belong? Are they Christians? What is said of their present state?
10. What runs into Lake St. Clair? Name the towns on its banks. For what is the Detroit River celebrated?
11. Into what Lake does the Detroit River open? Name its length, breadth and circumference. How much lower is it than Lake Huron? How are the difficulties of the navigation increased? What want has been felt on the Canadian shore? How is it about to be remedied?
12. How is the shallowness of Lake Erie accounted for?
13. In what light may this Lake be considered? How are the coasts divided? What do the American canals connect? What is said of the Welland Canal? What is said of the Government improvements generally? Why is it dangerous to travel on Lake Erie?
14. Where is one of the first Canadian settlements found? What place does it resemble? In what respect? Describe the appearance of the country. Describe its climate and productions.
15. Which are the chief towns? What is said of the northern shore?
16. For what is Pointe Pelée remarkable? What is said of the Rondeau? Why will this route be generally used?
17. What is said of the Indian settlements near Amherstburg and Pointe Pelée? Describe the condition of the Chippewas.

18. Where is Port Talbot? Who founded this settlement? In what state is it now? Where is Long Point? Describe it.
19. What is said of the Grand River? What is said of Oxford and Middlesex? What is said of London? What is said of the Indians? Give an account of the oldest Indian settlement in Canada West.
20. How was the first settlement destroyed? Where do they now reside? Where are the other tribes settled? To what churches do they belong? What are their numbers?
21. Where is Guelph situated? How far is it from Lake Erie? What is said of Galt? What is said of the whole of that country?
22. What does Western Canada form? What will it become? Is it salubrious? Where does ague exist?
23. Where is the settlement of the "Six Nations," or the descendants of the Iroquois? Why were they apprehensive? Who was deputed to represent their fears to the British? What was the result?
24. Of what tribes does the community consist? Have the Mohawks long been Christians? Which of the tribes are still heathens? What is said in conclusion of these tribes?
25. Where does the Welland Canal leave Lake Erie? Where does the feeder commence? What does the American shore possess? What are our prospects?
26. What conquest was made by the Americans? Why was defeat on our side certain? What is said of the Canadians? What remark is made upon this? What is said of the Lakes generally?
27. Repeat some lines written by a Canadian poet.
28. In what direction does the water communication now run? Where is Buffalo? What waters are connected by the Erie Canals?
29. What is the length of the Niagara River? What is its breadth? What is its current?
30. Where was the first vessel built which navigated these seas? On what adventure did she sail? What did they encounter? Did they escape this danger, and where did they land? With what was the vessel laden? What was the fate of this first vessel?
31. What is said of Grand Island? What is said of Navy Island? Where does the Welland enter the Niagara? What is said of the River and its current? Is this the boundary of navigation?
32. What is now heard? How is the River divided? How are the rapids formed?
33. Where does steam navigation end? Describe the appearance of the waters. What does Mrs. Jamieson say of the River? How does she describe the water of the rapids?

34. Of what form is the Canadian Fall? Describe the appearances of the water at this Fall.
35. What is said of Goat Island? What of the American Fall? With what ideas does it fill the mind? Mention its depth and breadth.
36. What has been erected across this Fall? Where can you enjoy a fine view? What is said of the waters? What of the columns of mist?
37. Where is "the Cavern of the Winds?" Describe it.
38. What is said of the neighbourhood? What is said of the American side? What of the Canadian side?
39. What is said of Niagara? Where is the "Whirlpool" situated? Describe it. Can it be approached? What does the River then regain?
40. What are Queenston Heights supposed to have been? What troops perished here? What is said of Brock's monument? What is said of Queenston? What of Lewiston? What of Youngstown and Niagara? What of the Forts and of the banks and water of the Niagara River?

CHAPTER III.

CONTENTS.

Lake Ontario—Toronto—Lake Simcoe—Bay of Quinté—Kingston—"The Lake of a Thousand Isles"—St. Regis—Cornwall Canal Rapids—Beauharnois Canal—The Ottawa—French River—Chaudière Falls—Rideau Canal—Grenville Canal—Lake of the Two Mountains—St. Anne's—Caughnawaga—Lachine Canal—Montreal.

1. Lake Ontario is the last and most easterly of the inland seas. It is elliptical in its form, measuring one hundred and seventy-two miles on a central line drawn from its south-west to its north-east extremity. Its sur-

face is two hundred and thirty-one feet above the level of the Atlantic, and it is so deep that in many places a line of a hundred fathoms has not reached the bottom. Nearly half of the Lake shore is in the State of New York.

2. At the head of Lake Ontario on Burlington Bay stands the flourishing city of Hamilton, which contains more than fifteen thousand inhabitants. No place in Canada is more distinguished for commercial enterprise. Behind it rise the Burlington Heights, a continuation of the ridge from Queenston Heights. At Toronto this ridge recedes from the Lake twenty-four miles, separating the streams falling into Lake Simcoe from those which fall into Lake Ontario. It continues onward as far as the Bay of Quinté, and has evidently at one time formed the boundary of the Lake, the same formation being still visible in the State of New York.

3. Lake Ontario is well deserving of its name, "The Beautiful;" and yet it is hard to say in what this beauty consists, for there are no hills, no bold shores, no striking scenery around it. It has not the appearance of a fresh-water lake so much as it has that of a vast, rolling ocean. Its waves are at times so rough that at first it was considered dangerous to navigate it with any but large vessels; now vessels of every description may be seen on its bosom.

4. Though the scenery round Lake Ontario is generally striking, yet the country about Burlington Bay at the head of the Lake is romantic and lovely. A small canal was some years since constructed through the sand-bank,

similar to those already spoken of, which incloses this beautiful Bay. It has within the last few years been repaired and strengthened, and cannot fail to be of infinite importance to this rapidly rising country. The country beyond, called Gore District, contains some of the finest lands in the Province, and is remarkably healthy. The Niagara District, too, is noted for its fertility and beauty. The Welland Canal empties itself into the Lake at Port Dalhousie, which lies between Burlington Bay and the Niagara River. This harbour is now much improved. The country bordering the Lake is well wooded; and through the numerous openings the prospect is enlivened by pretty towns and villages and flourishing settlements.

5. The city of Toronto lies nearly opposite to the mouth of the Niagara River at thirty-eight miles' distance. It is a rapidly rising place, quite English in its appearance, well drained and paved, and lighted with gas. It is very prosperous, and has more than doubled its numbers in ten years, the population being now upwards of 30,000. When it was selected by Governor Simcoe in 1793, two Indian families resided on the spot. It was first called York, but its name was afterwards changed to the noble Indian name of Toronto, or "The Place of Meeting." The country in every direction round is fertile, and agriculture thrives.

6. This city, previous to the union of the Provinces, was the Seat of Government for Western Canada; and, when the removal took place, many thought it would decline as rapidly as it had risen. The citizens, however, rousing

their energies, set about improving it in every way, and, having a fine agricultural country to fall back upon, they have succeeded in making Toronto one of the finest cities of America. In 1849 in consequence of the disturbances in Montreal, which ended in the destruction of the Parliament Buildings by fire, the Seat of Government was fixed at Toronto and Quebec alternately every four years; but the Provincial Parliament, in April, 1856, selected Quebec as the permanent Seat of Government.

7. The Lake Simcoe country, which lies north from it, is a rich and beautiful tract of land. The road leading to it, called Yonge Street, thirty-six miles in length, is macadamized and passes through a fertile and highly cultivated country. Lake Simcoe itself is a lovely and romantic spot, and is rapidly filling with settlers. The highest land in Canada is in this neighbourhood, and of course the highest level of the water, which is found in a small lake near the "Narrows" of Lake Simcoe.

8. There is a small Indian settlement at Snake Island, Lake Simcoe. They are one hundred and nine in number, and occupy twelve dwelling-houses. They have a school-house too, in which their children are instructed by a respectable teacher, and Divine service is performed by a resident Missionary of the Methodist persuasion, to which these Indians belong. Their Missionary, who has been acquainted with them since 1839, states that the majority of them are strictly moral in their conduct, and most of the adults decidedly pious.

9. Below Toronto lie the harbours of Port Hope and

Cobourg, and between them and Kingston stretches the peninsula of Prince Edward. The Genesee, the Oswego, and the Black River flow into Lake Ontario from the State of New York. The principal river on the Canadian side is the Trent, which, issuing out of Rice Lake, after a very winding course of nearly one hundred miles, falls into the Bay of Quinté. The Otonabee falls into the north shore of Rice Lake, and may be considered as a continuation of the Trent. They are both broad and full rivers, and are navigable for boats to a considerable distance.

10. There is a settlement of Mississaguas at Alnwick, not far from Rice Lake. Previous to 1827 they were Pagans, wandering in the neighbourhood of Belleville, Kingston and Gananoque, and were known under the name of the Mississaguas of the Bay of Quinté. After their conversion to Christianity they were received into the Methodist Church, and settled at Grape Island, six miles from Belleville. In 1830 they removed to Alnwick, where they are progressing in industry and agriculture. They are in general consistent and pious Christians, and have an excellent Missionary who has ministered to them for the last fourteen years. Their number is two hundred and thirty-three. At Rice Lake there is another settlement; the village contains thirty houses, three barns, and a schoolhouse. They have been reclaimed from their wandering life, and settled in their present location fifteen years. Their number is one hundred and fourteen. On Mud or Chemang Lake there is a settlement, which is supported by the New England Company. They are Christians

and are visited by the Missionary from Peterborough. Their number is ninety-four. The Balsam Lake Indians, ninety in number, have lately removed to Lake Scugog, as they are anxious to become agriculturists. They have a school and a resident Methodist Missionary.

11. The long and winding Bay of Quinté not only encloses a very beautiful and fertile peninsula, but is dotted round with pretty towns, villages and settlements. Belleville at the head of the Bay is the place of most consequence; next to it is Picton, a very pretty little town; and on every side the most charming scenery presents itself.

12. On the peninsula of Prince Edward is a remarkable lake on the top of a mountain. Its depth is so great that it cannot be fathomed; and, as it is on a level with Lake Erie, which is only sixty or seventy feet deep, it is said to be connected with it by some mysterious subterranean communication.

13. At Tyendanaga in this Bay there is a very interesting settlement of Mohawks. These Indians separated from their nation in the State of New York about the year 1784. They were Christians long before they came to Canada, and as far back as the reign of Queen Anne were presented with a service of plate for the communion. They belong to the Church of England, and, their place of worship having become too small for the congregation, they have lately built a commodious stone edifice, the expense of which is defrayed out of their own funds. Their number is three hundred and eighty.

14. Kingston is finely situated near the spot where old Fort Froutenac stood, its appearance is pleasing, and the surrounding country picturesque. The inhabitants are about twelve thousand in number, and it is rapidly recovering from the shock occasioned by the removal of the Seat of Government. It is a place of some commercial importance, being the port of the Rideau Canal, which with the Ottawa opens up so much of the back country, and is a mean of communication with Montreal. The town-hall and market are very handsome, and the powerful fortifications all round the city give it an appearance of dignity and strength. The harbour is excellent, ships of the line could lie close to the shore, and a strong fort commands the entrance. Ship building is carried on to a considerable extent, and many vessels have been despatched from Kingston to Liverpool direct.

15. The stream, issuing from the eastern extremity of Lake Ontario, is now for the first time called the St. Lawrence. In the course of a few miles the channel becomes so wide and so full of islands that it has obtained the name of "The Lake of the Thousand Isles." These islands are of every imaginable shape, size and appearance, some of them barely visible, others covering many acres; but their broken outline generally presents the most picturesque combinations of wood and water. While sailing among them, you find yourself sometimes enclosed in a narrow channel, then you discover many openings like noble rivers, and soon after you appear to be on the bosom of a spacious lake.

"Hail Lake of Thousand Isles!
Which clustered lie within thy circling arms,
Their flower-strown shores kissed by the silver tide,
As fair art thou as aught
That ever in the lap of nature lay."

16. As you emerge from this fairy scene, and find yourself within the banks of a river, you approach Brockville, one of the prettiest towns in Canada. The houses are built with considerable taste, and the scenery they command is exquisite. Below lies Prescott, a spot made memorable during the late insurrection, and on the opposite shore stands the American town of Ogdensburg.

17. An island in the centre now obstructs the St. Lawrence, and produces what is called the "Long Sault." The stream, rushing through a narrow passage on each side, hurries on the bark with great velocity, and the two currents, meeting at the lower end, dash against each other, and form what is called the "Big Pitch." To avoid these rapids at the Long Sault, a very fine canal has been constructed by the Government, called the Cornwall Canal. The Indian Village of St. Regis, where the boundary of 45° strikes the St. Lawrence, lies opposite the town of Cornwall.

18. Here, on a small portion of the hunting-grounds of their once powerful nation, is to be found a settlement of Iroquois. As the parallel 45° intersects the tract of land they still own, part of it is in Canada and part in the United States. The number of British Indians is four hundred and fifty, and the Americans are said to be equally numer-

ous. Many of the men continue to procure a precarious subsistence by hunting, and the women employ themselves in making up the skins of animals, killed in winter, into mitts and moccassins, and in manufacturing splint baskets and brooms. The St. Regis Indians have a large stone church with a steeple and two bells, which was erected upwards of fifty years ago at their expense. A French Canadian Missionary is maintained by the Government at the village, where he resides permanently, and devotes his whole time to the tribe. A great portion of the service here consists of singing, of which the Indians are passionately fond. They have not advanced much in piety or religious knowledge.

19. After passing the Canal the River, expanding to the width of five miles, is called Lake St. Francis. At its termination begins a succession of very formidable rapids, varying in intricacy, depth and width of channel. They are called the Coteau du Lac the Split Rock and Cascades.

20. While sailing along the shores of Lake St. Francis, which lies entirely within the British territories, you may observe a large *Cairn* or pile of stones heaped up as for the warriors of old, which has been raised by the Loyal Glengary Highlanders in honour of Sir John Colborne, now Lord Seaton, formerly Governor General of Canada.

21. The rapids commence below the Lake, and continue for about nine miles. Formerly they used to interrupt the navigation, but now steamboats of proper size and build come over them daily in safety. They do not pass

without risk, however, as may be well imagined, when you consider that the rapid current sweeps your little vessel close to rocks and islands, which, if touched, would ensure destruction. The voyage down the St. Lawrence from Kingston to Montreal is one of the most exciting and delightful that the country offers. The eligibility of this route has been increased lately by the re-discovery of a channel which, it is said, was used long ago by the French *voyageurs*. For this discovery we are indebted to one of the steam-boat captains, aided by an enterprising forwarding merchant of Montreal.

22. In order to open up the communication between Lake St. Francis and Lake St. Louis, and to enable all the vessels that come down the River to return up again avoiding all these rapids, a canal has been made by Government, which is called the Beauharnois Canal, and which is now in use. Below these rapids the River spreads out into Lake St. Louis, near which there is a beautiful fall of the same name. Here the St. Lawrence receives an important accession by the influx of the great stream of the Ottawa from the north-west.

23. The Uttawas or Ottawa has even yet been but partially explored. It is said to have its source near the Rocky Mountains, and to travel a distance of twenty-five hundred miles. This has never been clearly ascertained, but it is known to flow from beyond Lake Temiscaming, and to have a course of at least five hundred miles.

24. Formerly from forty to fifty canoes proceeded every year from Lachine in the Island of Montreal with

articles of traffic, and ascended the Ottawa for about three hundred miles, whence they were carried across *Portages*, or paddled along Lakes, and then passed through French River to Lake Huron. The coasts of this Lake and those of Lake Superior were then traversed until the *voyageurs* met at the *Grand Portage* with the messengers called "*Coureurs des Bois*," who brought the furs from the Indian hunting-grounds. They here exchanged their skins, called *Peltry*, for the European goods brought by the *voyageurs*. Although the exchange was effected with much difficulty, and at so great a distance from the sea-shore, large fortunes were frequently made by the merchants engaged in this traffic. The *voyageurs* returned with these furs to Montreal in their light bark canoes, in which these adventurers have been known to perform voyages of thousands of miles. The Ottawa was then the grand route of the fur traders, and was little known except to those employed in that business.

25. The Ottawa is connected with Lake Huron by the French River and Lake Nepissing. Two cataracts occur in French River, one just as it leaves the Lake, and the other twenty miles below, called the "Recollet." There are also several other rapids, one of which is distinguished by thirteen wooden crosses, which commemorate an equal number of fatal accidents that have occurred in crossing it.

26. French River is about seventy-five miles long. Its breadth varies, sometimes extending more than a league,

and then flowing between lengthened ledges of rock, in which are excavated deep and narrow bays. It is said that few prospects exceed in singularity and grandeur those which are here afforded by groups of long and lofty islets scattered along the deep dark bays, the clear water reflecting their rugged outlines and wild foliage amidst the solemn stillness which pervades these solitudes. From Lake Nepissing you pass by a rapid river into the Ottawa.

27. The navigation of this beautiful river is interrupted by cataracts and rapids, and the scenery is extremely picturesque. It formerly divided Upper from Lower Canada, and settlements are formed along its banks for upwards of a hundred miles. The lands are excellent, with abundance of fine timber and mountains of iron ore, which, when the country is farther advanced in manufactures, will doubtless prove exceedingly valuable.

28. Little is known, however, of the Ottawa country beyond the Falls and Portage "*des Allumets*," one hundred miles above the Township of Hull. Here the River is divided into two channels by an island fifteen miles long; and, about twelve miles after its junction has taken place, it is again divided by an island twenty miles long. Owing to the numerous cascades and falls, the scenery here is extremely romantic. The banks of the Ottawa for some distance is composed of white marble, which may be traced along the margin of the stream. This delightful district is now colonized.

29. The magnificent "*Lake des Chats*" is fifteen miles long and about one mile wide, but its spacious bays

extend it to three miles. Kinnel Lodge, the residence of the Highland Chief M'Nab, is romantically situated on the south shore, which is more bold, more elevated and better settled than the northern.

30. The Chaudièré Falls, which are in the Ottawa, just above the entrance of the Rideau Canal, are eighty feet in height by two hundred and twelve in width. They are situated near the centre of the River, and attract a considerable portion of the waters, which are strongly compressed by the shape of the rock that impedes them. In the Great Chaudière or Kettle the sounding line has not found bottom at three hundred feet. It is supposed that there are subterranean passages, which convey the immense mass of waters beneath the River. In fact half a mile lower down it comes boiling up again from the *Kettles*.

31. Across these Falls has been thrown the celebrated Union Bridge, which connects Eastern and Western Canada. It is said to be one of the most remarkable bridges in the World both with respect to situation and construction. Vast rafts of timber are brought down this River from a distance of several hundreds of miles. The dexterity, with which the lumberers manage these masses, is astonishing, particularly when directing them down these Falls. The improvement of the slides made for passing these timbers is amongst the numerous works which Government have lately completed.

32. The Rideau Canal commences at the termination of a small bay in the Ottawa, one hundred and twenty-

eight miles distant from Montreal, and one hundred and fifty from Kingston, and about a mile below these Falls. This communication is more correctly a succession of raised waters, by means of dams, with natural lakes intervening, than a canal properly speaking. Lake Rideau is the summit pond, and the waters which burst out at the White Fish Falls flow into the Gananoque River, which is the waste-weir for regulating the waters in Lake Rideau. Thus the water in the whole canal, whether in times of flood or drought, is kept at a steady height. The connection between Kingston and the Ottawa, a distance of one hundred and thirty-two miles, is kept up by this canal.

33. Below the Chaudière the Ottawa has an uninterrupted navigation for steam-boats to Grenville sixty miles distant. The current is gentle, and the scenery pleasing from the numerous islands, the luxuriant foliage of the trees, and the glimpses which are obtained of infant settlements upon the skirts of the forest and the margin of the stream. At Grenville commences the impetuous rapid called the "Long Sault," which is only descended by *voyageurs* or raftsmen of experienced skill and energy. Below the Long Sault the River continues at intervals rapid and unmanageable as far as to Point Fortune, where it expands into the Lake of the Two Mountains, and finally forms a junction with the St. Lawrence.

34. The Grenville Canal, formed to overcome these obstacles, consists of three sections, one at the Long Sault, another at the Fall called the "Chûte à Blondeau,"

and the third at Carillon, which opens into the Lake of the Two Mountains, through which an uninterrupted navigation is maintained at Lachine.

35. In this rich and beautiful district the higher of the two hills, from which it obtains its name, is called Calvary, and is held sacred by the Canadians and the remnant of the great Indian nations living at its base. A large lake lies in its shade, terminated by the Rapids and Island of Ste. Anne, so celebrated in Moore's Canadian Boat-Song. The flourishing village, which surrounds the church, owes its existence and support to the contributions of the Canadian voyageurs, who never omit to pay their offerings at the shrine of Ste. Anne before engaging in any enterprise. Captain Franklin mentioned one of his Canadians, who, when on the most northern coast of America, nearly two thousand miles distant, requested an advance of wages that an additional offering might be transmitted by the hands of a friend to the shrine of this tutelar Saint. Many, who never have seen and never will see "Uttawas Tide," have sung about it till it has become almost a household word. The Indians at the Lake of the Two Mountains consist of Iroquois, Algonquins and Nepissings; their number is about one thousand. They are all Roman Catholics; Missionaries are settled amongst them; and they have a school conducted by a French Canadian; but their condition is far from prosperous.

36. Several miles above the Island of Montreal the waters divide into two branches. The smaller, winding between Isle Jesus, Isle Bizarre and the main continent,

rejoins the St. Lawrence at Repentigny. The greater portion, rushing among a cluster of islets and rocks lying in the channel between Isle Perrot and Ste. Anne, mingles its waters on the west with those of Lake St. Louis. The Iroquois settlement of Caughnawaga or "The Village of the Rapids" stands on this Lake ten miles from Montreal. This seigniory was granted for the benefit of the Iroquois by Louis XIV. in 1680, and a further grant was made afterwards by Frontenac. Those, who do not cultivate the ground, subsist in summer by navigating steamers, boats and rafts down to Montreal, and in the winter by the profits arising from the sale of snow-shoes, moccasins, &c. They have every means of instruction enjoyed by the other Roman Catholics, and are reported to be regular in their attendance at church. Their number is about eleven hundred. They behaved nobly during the insurrection, and have been rewarded by special marks of Her Majesty's favour since that period. At Caughnawaga is a station of the Montreal and New York Railroad; and the steamer Iroquois now plies during the months of winter.

37. Passing Caughnawaga, the St. Lawrence now contracts and boils up and foams amongst small islands and over rocks for nine miles, forming the Rapids of Lachine or Sault St. Louis. The Lachine Canal has been recently enlarged so as to enable large vessels, which have passed downwards, to avoid these very dangerous rapids and eventually communicate with the Ocean, as the Canal conveys the vessels across the Island to the harbour of

Montreal. Steamers now daily descend these rapids during summer with safety.

Questions on Part IV.—Chapter 3.

1. What is said of Lake Ontario? What is said of its form? What is said of its surface and depth? How much of the shore belongs to the State of New York?
2. Where is Hamilton? For what is it distinguished? What Heights are near it? What streams does this ridge separate? How far does it continue?
3. What is said of the "Beautiful Lake?" Describe its beautiful appearance. Its waves.
4. What is said of the scenery round Burlington Bay? What is said of the canal? Describe the Gore and Niagara Districts. Where is Port Dalhousie? How are the shores enlivened?
5. Where is Toronto situated? Describe it. Who resided here in 1793? What is the meaning of the word Toronto? What is said of the surrounding country?
6. How was the removal of the Seat of Government regarded? How did the citizens act, and what is Toronto now? When and why was the Seat of Government restored to Toronto? What is the arrangement for the future?
7. What is said of the Lake Simcoe country? What is said of Yonge Street? What is said of Lake Simcoe? Where is the highest land in Canada to be found?
8. Where is there a settlement of Chippewa Indians? What is their present state? What is reported of their religious character?
9. Name the towns below Toronto? What rivers come from the south? Which is the principal river on the Canadian side? In what light may the Otonabee be considered?
10. What Indian settlement is here? In what state were these Indians? What is said of Grape Island? To what place have they now removed? What is their character, and number? Mention another settlement. How long has the Rice Lake settlement been formed? What is said of the Indians of Mud Lake? What is said of Balsam Lake?
11. Describe the Bay of Quinté? What is said of Belleville and Picton?
12. Where is the Lake of the Mountain? With what Lake is it said to be connected?

13. What Indian settlement is in this Bay? How long have they been Christians? To what Church do they belong?
14. What is said of Kingston? What is the population? Why is it a place of commercial importance? What is said of the town-hall, the market, and the springs? What is said of the harbour and fort? What is said of ship building?
15. Where does the St. Lawrence first take its proper name? Into What does it expand? Describe these Islands. How do these views vary? Repeat some lines written on these by a Canadian.
16. Describe Brockville. Where are Prescott and Ogdensburgh?
17. What produces the Long Sault? How is the Big Pitch formed? What has been constructed at Cornwall? Where is St. Regis?
18. Why is St. Regis peculiarly interesting? How is their land situated? What are their numbers? Their employment? Describe their church. What is said of their Missionary?
19. What is the expansion of the River called? Where do the rapids commence?
20. What may be seen on the shores of Lake St. Francis?
21. What is said of the rapids? Does any risk attend this passage? Is the voyage agreeable? How has this route been improved? To whom are we indebted for this discovery?
22. For what purpose has the Beauharnois Canal been made? What is the expansion of the River then called? What river does the St. Lawrence receive here?
23. Where is the Ottawa said to have it source? How far is it certain that it flows?
24. In what manner was the trade with the Indians carried on formerly? How did the *voyageurs* then proceed? What did the Indians give in exchange for European goods? Was this a profitable traffic? How far have the Canadian *voyageurs* been known to travel in their canoes? What was the Ottawa at that time?
25. How is it connected with Lake Huron? Give an account of the Cataracts which occur. In what manner is one of the rapids distinguished?
26. Describe French River. What is said respecting the country around? How do you pass from Lake Nepissing?
27. How is the navigation of the Ottawa interrupted? What is said of it? In what does the country abound?
28. Is the Ottawa country well known? How is the River divided? What is said of the scenery here? What is said of the banks? What is said of the district?
29. Describe the "*Lac des Chats.*" Where is Kinnel Lodge?
30. What is said of the Chaudière Falls? Where are they situated? What is said of the depth of the Great Chaudière? Whither are the waters conveyed?

31. What remarkable bridge crosses those Falls? What is it said to be? How is timber brought down this River? What is said of the manner in which those rafts are guided? What is said of the improvement made by the Government?
32. Where does the Rideau Canal commence? What may this be called? Where is the summit level, and whether does the waste flow? What effect has this arrangement? What does the Rideau connect?
33. How far down is the Ottowa navigable? Describe the scenery of the River. Where does the Long Sault commence? How far do these rapids continue?
34. What is said of the Grenville Canal?
35. What is said of the district of the Lake of Two Mountains? Where is St. Anne's? How has the village been upheld? Repeat the story of a Canadian voyageur. How has the Ottawa become known? What tribes reside at the Lake of the Two Mountains? In what condition are they?
36. How are the waters divided? Where does the greater portion rush? Where is Caughnawaga? Who granted this seigniory? How do the Indians subsist? What privilege do they enjoy? What is said of their conduct? What railroad has a station here? What steamer plies during winter?
37. What does the St. Lawrence now form? Why has the Lachine Canal been enlarged? Do steamers now descend the rapids?

CHAPTER IV.

CONTENTS.

Montreal—The Richelieu—Lake Champlain—Lake St. Peter—Three Rivers—Quebec—The Falls of Montmorency—The St. Lawrence—The Saguenay.

1. The Island and Seigniory, on the south side of which the City of Montreal stands, is about thirty miles long, and its superior fertility has acquired for it the appellation of the "Garden of Canada." The slopes of the Mountain, which rises near the City, and from which it derives its

name, are wooded nearly to the summit ; but towards the base the forest-trees have been succeeded by orchards that produce apples, pears and plums of the choicest flavour.

2. Between the Mountain and the River the city and suburbs extend in every direction. It is a very handsome and lively place, and possesses a metropolitan appearance. It is well lighted and clean, and is rapidly improving in size, beauty and convenience. Noble wharves, built of stone, stretch along the shore, and the lofty warehouses and stores behind them give an idea of the great commercial importance to which it has risen. The magnificent French Church of Nôtre Dame is the largest building in the New World. The tall and elegant steeple of the English Church, the other steeples and domes of the Churches, Bonsecours Market, and splendid Bank of Montreal, with the Merchants' Exchange, Court-house and Post-office, all lately erected, ornament the City greatly, and convey a just impression of the wealth and importance of the commercial metropolis of Canada.

3. The situation of Montreal at the head of navigation for sea-going vessels must ensure its importance, and, even now when the canals are finished, enabling large vessels to pass up the Lakes, there is no doubt but that it will still secure an important share of the commerce of the country. Its position too in regard to the United States is very favourable. The facilities of transport to Brewsterville or South Montreal, thence on the Rail-road to St. John's, and onward by water to New York through Lake

Champlain and the Hudson, render the conveyance of goods and passengers both easy and expeditious. Like facilities are afforded by the Montreal and New York Railroad, (connecting with the Ogdensburgh Line at Mooers' Corners,) which is available during the winter by steam across the St. Lawrence at Lachine and Caughnawaga, where the river remains open. A Rail-road also connects Montreal with the City of Portland on the Atlantic sea-board, the South Montreal and St. John's Railway is extended to Rouse's Point on Lake Champlain, and there connects with the Ogdensburg Line.

4. The St. Lawrence below Montreal present a wide expanse, navigable for vessels of six hundred tons, which gives it all the advantages of a Sea-port. About forty-five miles lower down, where it widens into Lake St. Peter, it becomes rather shallow, and allows only a narrow passage for large ships. This is now deepened.

5. At the head of Lake St. Peter the St. Lawrence receives the Richelieu River, which issues from Lake Champlain, and flows for about seventy miles through a fertile country. It differs from most rivers in being narrow at its mouth and widening upwards; its banks are generally from eight to twelve feet high, deversified on each side by farms and extensive settlements in a high state of improvement. On or near it are neat, populous and flourishing villages, handsome churches, numerous mills of every description, good roads in all directions, and every characteristic of a prosperous country.

6. The breadth of the bed of the Richelieu at its

mouth is two hundred and fifty yards. This it preserves, with a few exceptions occasioned by some small and beautiful islands, up to Chambly Basin. This is an expansion of the River nearly circular, about a mile and a half in diameter, embellished by several little islands, which are covered with verdure and fine wood, as ornamentally disposed as if regulated by the hand of art. A very fine bridge has been lately erected over the Richelieu, which will be an immense benefit to the country. From the basin of Chambly the River continues to widen more or less to St. John's, where there is a ship navigation to the towns on Lake Champlain. There is a canal too, which has been formed to avoid the rapids on the Richelieu, and to connect the St. Lawrence and Lake Champlain.

7. Lake Champlain is the most picturesque of the inland waters. Its length is one hundred and twenty miles. It derives its name from Samuel Champlain, the distinguished man who discovered it in 1609. At Rouse's Point, where the Lake opens, are the fortress and outworks erected by the Americans whilst they considered this position within their own boundary. For some years it belonged to Canada, but by the Ashburton treaty of 1842 it was given up to the United States. It completely defends the pass of Lake Champlain, and the Americans are now improving it. A little below Rouse's Point are the British Naval Station and Garrison of Isle aux Noix; and here the hulks of ships and gunboats used in the late war are now lying.

8. The country around the Richelieu is very romantic and

beautiful, and in the distance are seen the bold and towering summits of Rouville, Belœil, Yamaska and Ste. Thérèse. The range of hills traversing the fine country, called the "Eastern Townships," is a continuation of the Green Mountains of Vermont. This territory is profusely watered by rivers, lakes and rivulets, which wind about in every direction. The British American Land Company have their possessions in this section. These Townships are situated between Vermont, New Hampshire and Maine, and the River St. Lawrence. The largest body of water, called Memphremagog Lake, which is thirty miles long and two miles wide, lies on the southern portion; Massawippi Lake is eight miles long, and one mile wide. These lakes discharge their waters by streams into the River St. Francis. The population here is increasing rapidly.

9. Returning down the Richelieu, or Chambly, as it is sometimes called, as you enter the Lake St. Peter, innumerable green islands and pretty villages rise on each side. Amongst these the pretty village of Sorel, or William Henry, stands conspicuous. This Lake is about twenty-five miles in length and from one to ten in breadth; its channel, which is very intricate, requires to be marked with beacons, usually small fir-poles stuck in the mud with part of the green tuft left on their tops. There is a settlement of Abenaquais on the River St. Francis, which rises to the southward and flows into this Lake. The majority reside in the village, which is thirty-seven acres in extent; but about a dozen families, who do not culti-

vate the ground, live in wigwams scattered over the country, and seldom resort to the village except to receive their presents. The Government support a Roman Catholic Missionary, as they are chiefly of that religion.

10. The Town of Three Rivers is very agreeably situated on the west side of the River St. Maurice at its confluence with the St. Lawrence. Its owes its name to the position of two small islands in the mouth of the former giving it the appearance of three distinct rivers. This is one of the oldest places in Canada, and at one time possessed a great share of the fur trade. On the right bank of the River, seven or eight miles above Three Rivers, are some iron forges, which were established so long ago as 1737 by the French. At the conquest of the Province the right of the French king devolved on his British Majesty, and these forges have been let to private persons who have worked them with success. The ore is abundant and equal to the best Swedish, and the *habitans* prefer having their stoves, pots and kettles made of it to any other. The workmen are chiefly Canadians. Of late years a great many saw-mills, conducted on an extensive scale, have been established on the St. Maurice, and the district in consequence is fast rising into importance.

11. The banks of the St. Maurice are generally high, and covered with large groves of fine majestic trees. Navigation extends for boats thirty-eight leagues, with the exception of the Portages. Up the western branch is a most extraordinary chain of lakes and navigable waters, the number of which is estimated at twenty-three. The

stupendous fall of the Shawenegan is magnificent, being one hundred and fifty feet perpendicular. The Falls of the Grande Mère, situated some miles above them, are, from their picturesque beauty, well worthy the attention of the attentive tourist. Nothing on the Continent of America can be met with of a grander or more imposing character. The St. Maurice is more than one hundred and forty miles in length. At Three Rivers there are about ninety Algonquins, who are in a state of great poverty; and on the River St. Maurice there are eighty-six of the Tête de Boule Tribe in a similar condition. The Abenaquais possess a few acres of land and three islands on the River Bécancour, nearly opposite to Three Rivers. Although christianized, they have neither church nor school. They make no progress in agriculture, support themselves by fishing, and are only eighty-four in number.

12. After passing the mouths of the St. Maurice, the banks of the St. Lawrence continue rising till you reach the Richelieu Rapids, which so contract the channel as to render it hazardous except at particular periods of the tide. The banks afterwards expand, and present an extremely interesting prospect, churches, villages and white cottages profusely scattered along the shore. The view is bounded by remote and lofty mountains, from amongst which the rapid river Jacques Cartier rushes impetuously into the St. Lawrence. The country on both sides is thickly populated, and exhibits a succession of parishes, mostly consecrated by name to the memory of

some Saint. The postroad leads through the parishes on the North Shore. The Chaudière River rises in Lake Megantic to the South, and rushes over a beautiful rapid, four miles from its mouth, dashing and foaming till it mingles with the St. Lawrence. Near Quebec the River narrows its channel to thirteen hundred and fourteen yards, but the navigation is completely unobstructed.

13. Quebec is situated on the north-west side of the St. Lawrence in latitude 48° 40′ north and longitude 71° 15′ west, and cannot be approached without emotions of admiration. A ridge of high land, commencing at Cap Rouge and extending for about eight miles along the bank, terminates at the eastern extremity in a lofty promontory, rising in front of the beautiful basin formed by the confluence of the St. Charles with the St. Lawrence. On the highest point of this promontory is Cape Diamond, the strongest citadel in the World, rising three hundred and fifty feet above the level of the water, and terminating towards the east in a round tower, whence is displayed the national standard of England. From this Cape the view extends more than forty miles up and down the River. Below is the beautiful Island of Orleans, and on the opposite side stands the pretty village of Point Levi with its churches and neat dwellings, surrounded by a variety of pleasing scenery. On the north flows the River St. Charles, winding amidst valleys and hills with villages on their sides, whilst the prospect is closed by a bold screen of mountains.

14. Below the rocky promontory lies the Lower Town,

which is built on a strip of Land saved from the water, and stretches from the suburb of St. Roch to where the Citadel overhangs. Busy wharves extend all round the Town and for three miles up the River. The St. Lawrence, which flows majestically before the Town, is one of the greatest, most noble and beautiful of rivers, and is the farthest navigable for vessels of a large size of any in the World. Its length, from its mouth in the Gulf of St. Lawrence to the harbour of Quebec, is three hundred and sixty miles, while Montreal is one hundred and eighty miles higher up its course.

15. In summer the harbour of Quebec is filled with vessels of every description, and presents a very gay and bustling scene. In winter, however, it wears a very different aspect, the River being choked up with broken fields of ice exhibiting the most varied and fantastic appearace. The cold is intense, but the ice is seldom quite firm between Quebec and Point Levi, and the *habitans* cross in wooden canoes, hauling or pushing them forward amongst the cakes of ice. When the ice does form, it is called a *pont ;* there is always a kind of jubilee, and people are to be seen in every direction sleighing, sliding, skating and running. The ferry-men, however, do their utmost to prevent the ice from taking, as it deprives them of their living while it lasts. It has been remarked that Quebec has an Italian summer and a Russian winter. Now, however, from the extension of Railroads Quebec will not be so pent up in winter as it has been. The Quebec and Richmond Road will throw it into rapid communication

with the Atlantic sea-board, with Montreal and Upper Canada, and a Railroad on the north shore is also in contemplation.

16. The Huron name for Quebec is *Tiatontarili*, which signifies "The Place of a Strait," a name peculiarly appropriate to it. The Indians in Cartier's time always called it Stadacona, which probably had the same meaning in the Algonquin language. Charlevoix says that it is derived from the Algonquin word Que, which signifies a strait. It is contended by some, however, that the word is not to be found in the Indian language, but that it is derived from the Normans, the first part *Que* being undoubtedly French, and the latter *bec* being uniformly applied by them to any lofty promontory or cape. Cartier's pilot is said to have exclaimed in Norman French, when he saw the cape, "Que bec!" What a beak! Champlain in his book says distinctly that this is the Indian name given to it when he first came to the country, and many Indian terminations render it quite probable.

17. Quebec, as a fortress, is superior to any on the continent of America, the Citadel or Cape Diamond, together with a formidable combination of strongly constructed works extending over forty acres, rendering it impregnable. The memorable battle-field of the Plains of Abraham stretches to the west. The Hurons have been long settled at the village of *Lorette* near Quebec, and claim to be the descendants of those Hurons, to whom the seigniory of Sillery was given by the French Monarch in 1651. Their present number is one hundred

and eighty-nine ; they are all half-breeds, and agriculture has made little progress among them. Their fondness for hunting and fishing still continues, and they usually devote three months in the spring and three in the autumn to these pursuits. They have a chapel, and a Missionary is maintained by Government for their instruction. In the school there are about twenty five apt pupils. Within the last two or three years it has been said that they were improving in morals and good habits, but the most recent traveler, who visited them, gives a very unfavorable account of this miserable remnant of a great Nation.

18. Crossing the St. Charles, you pass along the road, leading north-east amongst the cottages, farms and orchards at Beauport, to the Fall of Montmorency. This river flows down from the southern mountains among woods and rocks, and then over rugged steeps through a richly cultivated country, until within a few yards of the precipitous banks of the St. Lawrence. Here it thunders over a perpendicular rock, two hundred and twenty feet high, in an extended sheet of a foaming appearance resembling snow. This fall is most beautiful in the spring, when the river is full of water from the melting snows.

19. The Isle of Orleans, about five miles down the River from Quebec, is thickly sprinkled over with white cottages, cornfields, orchards and meadows, with here and there a village church. There are many other islands worthy of attention ; but that, which gives the chief charm to the scenery of the St. Lawrence, is the lofty range of mountains extending from the Alleghanies. Their summits

and outline have been seen at Sea one hundred miles distant, and they are supposed to be as high as the Pyrenees.

20. About twenty miles below Quebec the waters of the St. Lawrence begin to mingle with those of the Ocean, and to acquire a saline taste, which increases till at Kamouraska, seventy-five miles nearer its mouth, they become completely salt. It is customary, however, to consider this River as continued down to the Island of Anticosti, and as bounded by the Mingan settlement on the Northern and by Cape Rosier on the Southern Shore. The Bay of Chaleur and the Restigouche divide Canada from New Brunswick for a considerable distance. At the head of the Bay, in the village of Mission Point, there is a small remnant of Mumais, a tribe formerly very numerous in Nova Scota and New Brunswick. They are three hundred and thirty-five in number, and are but little known. Though they are Roman Catholics, they have neither church nor school. They do not share in the distribution of presents, and have, till within the last two years, fallen into a state of misery and neglect. They now, however, display a disposition to improve.

21. At the mouth the St. Lawrence is sixty miles wide, while at Kamouraska it is not more than twenty miles. The shores of the dangerous Island of Anticosti, in the mouth of the River, are flat ; but light-houses are now erected on its eastern and western points, and depots of provisions have been formed at several places for the relief of shipwrecked persons.

22. The counties of Gaspé, Rimouski and Kamouraska,

comprehending a valuable territory, extend for three hundred miles along the St. Lawrence. Cape Rosier is low, but the land behind rises into high round hills, and the whole is covered with trees of various kinds. The high mountains on both sides often terminate into capes or bold head-lands, which have a fine effect. The narrow level tract of land extending between the River and these mountains is cultivated, and the delicious verdure of the corn-fields is in strong contrast with the hue of the pine forests in the overshadowing back-ground. The parish of St. Thomas on the Rivière du Sud in l'Islet County is the most populous place below Quebec, and a low belt of thickly peopled country extends thence until within a few miles of Point Levi. The Seigniories, which extend all along the shores, were granted while Canada was under the government of France, and the inhabitants are nearly all French Canadians. The Townships have all been granted since Canada belonged to Great Britain, and have been settled by English, Irish, Scotch, and Americans.

23. The Northern Coast of the St. Lawrence exhibits for more than two hundred miles the same primitive wildness which it presented to the earliest navigators. With the exception of Tadousac at the mouth of the Saguenay, and the Queen's Posts at Seven Islands' Bay and at Port Neuf, scarcely any signs of art or civilization appear.

24. It was to Tadousac that the first French adventurers, who visited Canada, resorted, and it continued to be for a long time one of the chief fur-trading posts. The Saguenay is more picturesque than any other river in the

Province. Its banks are composed of a continued range of elevated cliffs, rising abruptly in some places from one hundred to fifteen hundred feet. At its mouth the Saguenay is one hundred fathoms deeper than the St. Lawrence. It runs about west for the distance of seventy miles to the Indian Mission called Chicoutimi. About sixty miles above Tadousac there is a Bay, called "Grand Bay" or "Ha! Ha! Bay," about nine miles deep, where the progress of a flourishing settlement was considerably retarded by a destructive fire in the summer of 1846. It derives this name from the original discoverers, who had taken it for the main river, exclaiming Ha! Ha! on finding its terminus. They then retraced their course, and, entering a narrow strait of the River opening on the north shore, and bounded by two capes only three quarters of a mile apart, and rising five hundred feet perpendicularly, they ascended as far as to Chicoutimi. This is at present one of the Queen's Posts, and the Hudson's Bay Company have large stores here for the purposes of the fur-trade. Fifteen miles above Chicoutimi is the head of tide-water, making the river navigable for schooners eighty-five miles. Here is a range of rapids, which extends ten miles. The Indians say there is a subterranean fall above the foot of the rapids, which they call "the Manitou or the Great Spirit." There is a carrying-place to avoid these falls, called "*Le Grand Portage.*" The number of wandering Indians in this and other places is about two hundred.

25. The Saguenay is discharged from Lake St. John,

which is exactly one hundred miles round. Eleven large rivers fall into it, and it has only this one outlet. The Indians call it Piégougamis, or the Flat Lake. Into this there is a remarkable Curtain Fall of two hundred and thirty-six feet, so conspicuous as to be seen at forty or fifty miles' distance. Its Indian name is "*Ouéat chouan*," or "Do you see a fall there?" The climate of the valley of the St. John is said by persons possessing the best information to be far preferable to that of the sea-coast, and the land is remarkably fine. It is the intention of Government to open these fertile lands to the French Canadians, who, owing to their peculiar laws in having no right of primogeniture, have now in several places overpopulated the old settlements. At Chicoutimi are some interesting traces of the Jesuits, who had a settlement here when Canada was first colonized. A chapel built by them still remains, almost entire.

26. South-east of the Saguenay lies Green Isle, about seven miles long. Passing by Hare Island, we come to Isle aux Coudres, where the channel contracts to thirteen hundred and twenty yards, and the navigation becomes difficult. Grosse Isle, in which is the Quarantine Station, and several other groups of islands lie between this and the beautiful Isle of Orleans, which is about five miles below Quebec. To the south of this lies the low belt of beautiful and thickly peopled country extending from the Rivière du Sud to Point Levi opposite Quebec.

27. The climate of Canada East is very severe; but, except to the weak and feeble, the consumptive and the

rheumatic, it is very healthy. The winter, though long, is far from being disagreeable, and is to the Canadian a season of cheerfulness and enjoyment. As the country is easily traversed by light carioles, which pass quickly over the snow, long journeys are sometimes made; and visits, pic-nics, fishing and hunting parties enliven the winter. The appearance of the country is sometimes exceedingly beautiful, the deep-blue unclouded sky above forming a fine contrast with the snowy earth below; and, when the trees are covered with icicles, which generally occurs after a thaw, the effect is dazzling. When the snow melts and the early summer sets in, the weather is beautiful and very warm. July and August are extremely hot. The fall, which continues till November, is the pride of the year in all parts of Canada. In the south-western portion of the Province the weather is very mild; and, when the lands are drained, and more thickly settled, they will probably exceed all others in Canada in this respect.

28. There is a very great difference in the temperature of winter and summer, the cold of the one and the heat of the other being much more intense than in most European countries. The summer of Quebec, when compared to that of Edinburgh, is almost tropical, exceeding it in general by ten degrees, and in the hottest month by fifteen. In regard to agricultural productions the action is more favourable than in the countries of Europe, which have the same mean temperature. The intense heat of our short summer ripens corn and fruits that will not grow in other countries, which have the same mean temperature. Thus

Quebec agrees in mean temperature with Christiana in Norway, yet wheat is seldom attempted in Norway, whilst it is the staple production of Canada. The north of England agrees with Western Canada, yet the grape, the peach and the melon come to perfection here and will not ripen there.

" No clime than this hath prouder, brighter hopes,
With its innumerable and untrod leagues
Of fertile earth, that wait but human skill
And patient industry, by commerce fed,
To win their way to eminence as proud
As any nation on the varied Earth—
The balmy winds may breathe more fragrant sighs o'er other climates,
And rarer flowers may in their gardens bloom,
But in stern majesty and grandeur none
May bear the palm away:"

29. Canada is distinguished for its liberality in religious affairs. Education in many quarters is rapidly advancing, colleges are increasing, and good schools are now found in almost every town. The Government schools are improving, and the people, who have borne the " burden and heat of the day," are now, it is to be hoped, awakening to the importance of giving their children those advantages which many of themselves did not possess.

30. Canada has a Governor appointed by the Sovereign of England and representing Her Majesty in the Colony, a Legislative Council appointed by the Sovereign, and a Legislative Assembly appointed by the people. Before

any laws can be binding, it is necessary that they be passed by the Legislative Council and the Legislative Assembly, and receive the assent of the Governor in the name of the Sovereign.

31. By an Act passed in the Session of Parliament held in 1853 the number of Members of the Legislative Assembly has been raised to one hundred and thirty. A change is contemplated in the constitution of the Upper House of Parliament.

32. Canada East is divided into the three principal Districts of Quebec, Three Rivers and Montreal, and the two inferior Districts of Gaspé and St. Francis. These Districts are subdivided into Counties.

33. Population of the Counties, Cities and Towns in Upper Canada, as returned in the Census of 1851.

Counties, Cities, Towns and Villages.	*Popu'n.*	*Total.*
Addington, (County)	14465	
Bath, (Village)	700	
		17165
Brant, (County)	18659	
Brantford, (Town)	3877	
Paris, (Village)	1890	
		25426
Bruce, (County)		2837
Carleton, (County)	23203	
Bytown, (Town) now Ottawa, (City)	7760	
Richmond, (Village)	434	
		31397
Dundas, (County)		13811
Durham, (County)	28256	
Port Hope	2476	
		30732

Elgin, (County)	24144	
St. Thomas	1274	
		25418
Essex, (County)	14937	
Amherstburg, (Town)	1880	
		16817
Frontenac, (County)	19150	
Kingston, (City)	11585	
		30735
Glengary, (County)		17596
Grenville, (County)	18551	
Prescott, (Town)	2156	
		20707
Grey, (County)		13217
Haldimand, (County)		18788
Halton, (County)		18322
Hastings, (County)	27408	
Belleville, (Town)	4569	
		31977
Huron, (County)	17869	
Goderich, (Town)	1329	
		19198
Kent, (County)	15399	
Chatham, (Town)	2070	
		17469
Lambton, (County)		10515
Lanark, (County)	25401	
Perth (Town)	1916	
		27317
Leeds, (County)	27034	
Brockville, (Town)	3246	
		30280
Lennox, (County)		7955
Lincoln, (County)	16160	
Niagara, (Town)	3340	
St. Catherines	4368	
		23868

Middlesex, (County).....	32864	
London, (Town).....	7035	
		39899
Norfolk, (County).....	19829	
Simcoe, (Town).....	1452	
		21281
Northumberland, (County).....	27358	
Cobourg, (Town).....	3871	
		31229
Ontario, (County).....	29434	
Oshawa, (Village).....	1142	
		30576
Oxford, (County).....	29336	
Woodstock, (Town).....	2112	
Ingersol, (Village).....	1190	
		32638
Peel, (County).....		24816
Perth, (County).....		15545
Peterboro, (County).....	13046	
Peterboro, (Town).....	2191	
		15237
Prescott, (County).....		10487
Prince Edward, (County).....	17318	
Picton (Town).....	1569	
		18887
Renfrew, (County).....		9415
Russell, (County).....		2870
Simcoe, (County).....	26158	
Barrie, (Town).....	1007	
		27165
Stormont, (County).....	12997	
Cornwall, (Town).....	1646	
		14643
Victoria, (County).....		11657
Waterloo, (County).....	23109	
Preston, (Village).....	1180	

Galt, (Village).....	2248	
		26537
Welland, (County).....	17857	
Chippewa, (Village).....	1193	
Thorold, (Village).....	1091	
		20141
Wellington, (County).....	24936	
Guelph, (Town).....	1860	
		26796
Wentworth, (County).....	24990	
Hamilton, (City).....	14112	
Dundas, (Town).....	3517	
		42619
York, (County).....	48944	
Toronto, (City).....	30775	
		79719
		952004

34. Population of Lower Canada as by Census for 1851.

Counties, Cities, Towns, and Villages.	*Popu'n.*	*Total.*
Beauharnois, (County).....	38660	
Huntingdon, (Village).....	677	
Beauharnois,.....	874	
		40213
Bellechasse, (County).....	17732	
Berthier en bas, (Village).....about	250	
		17982
Berthier, (County).....	33008	
Berthier en haut, (Village).....	1900	
		34608
Bonaventure, (County).....		10844
Chambly, (County).....	14981	
Chambly,.....	884	
Longueuil,.....	1496	
St. Johns,.....	3215	
		20576

Champlain (County).....	13146	
Batiscan, (Village).....about	750	
		13896
Dorchester, (County).....		43105
Drummond, (County).....		16562
Gaspé, (County).....		10904
Huntingdon, (County).....	38888	
Laprairie, (Village).....	1757	
		40645
Kamouraska, (County).....		20396
Leinster, (County).....	28606	
L'Assomption,.....	1084	
		29690
L'Islet, (County).....	18420	
Montmagny, (Village).....	1221	
		19641
Lotbinière, (County).....		16657
Megantic, (County).....		13835
Missisquoi, (County).....	13015	
Phillipsburg, (Village).....	466	
		13484
Montmorency, (County).....		9598
Montreal, (County).....	17596	
Montreal, (City).....	57715	
Lachine, (Village).....	1075	
Côte St. Louis, (Village).....	995	
		77381
Nicolet, (County).....		19657
Nicolet, (Village).....		
Ottawa, (County).....	21734	
Aylmer, (Village).....	1169	
Hull,.....		22903
Portneuf, (County).....		19366
Quebec, (County).....	19474	
Quebec, (City).....	32052	
		16526

Richelieu, (County)	21720	
St. Ours, (Village)	542	
Sorel	3424	
		25686
Rouville, (County)		27031
Rimouski, (County)	25887	
Fraserville, (Village)	995	
		26882
Saguenay, (County)		20783
Sherbrooke, (County)	17016	
Sherbrooke, (Town,)	2998	
		20019
St. Maurice, (County	22626	
Three Rivers, (Town)	4936	
		27562
St. Hyacinthe, (County)	27310	
St. Hyacinthe, (Town)	3313	
		30623
Shefford, (County)		16482
Stanstead, (County)		13898
Terrebonne, (County)	25662	
Ste. Thérèse, (Village)	1129	
		26791
Two Mountains, (County)	29686	
St. Eustache, (Village)	794	
		30470
Vaudreuil, (County)	20986	
Vaudreuil, (Village)	443	
		21429
Verchères, (County)		14393
Yamaska, (County)		14748
		890261

Questions on Part IV.—Chapter 4.

1. What appellation has the Island of Montreal acquired? Describe the Mountain.
2. How is the city situated, and what is its appearance? In what respects is it improving? What are the striking features of Montreal? Mention the most beautiful objects.
3. What is said of the situation of Montreal with regard to commerce? With regard to the United States? What advantages does the usual route southwards present?
4. Describe the St. Lawrence below Montreal? Where is Lake Peter?
5. What river does the St. Lawrence now receive? Describe the Richelieu and its shores. Give an account of these improvements.
6. How wide is the Richelieu? Describe the Chambly Basin. What has been erected near Chambly? What is said of St. John's? What is said of Chambly Canal?
7. What is said of Lake Champlain? Whence does it derive its name? To whom does Rouse's Point belong? Is its position good? Where is Isle aux Noix?
8. What beautiful mountains rise near the Richelieu? What hills cross the Eastern Townships? How is this country watered? How are these Townships situated? Mention some of the Lakes. How do they discharge their waters?
9. Describe the entrance into Lake St. Peter. Where is Sorel? What is said of this Lake? What is said of the Indians of St. Francis? Where do they reside? Of what denomination are they chiefly?
10. Where is Three Rivers? To what circumstance does it owe its name? What did it once possess? Where are the iron forges found? Are they now worked? What is said of these forges? In consequence of what is the district fast rising into importance?
11. Describe the St. Maurice. How far does navigation extend? What chain of lakes is found here? What is said of the Falls? How long is the St. Maurice? Are there any Indians in this neighbourhood? What is said of the Indians of Becancour? In what state are they?
12. What is said of the St. Lawrence? What prospect is presented? How is the view bounded? Is the country populous? Where does the Chaudière River rise? What is the width of the St. Lawrence near Quebec?
13. What is said of Quebec? Describe the promontory. Where is Cape Diamond? How far does the view extend? Describe the course of the St. Charles.

14. Where is Lower Town situated? What is said of the St. Lawrence? How far does it run?
15. What appearance does Quebec present in summer? What in winter? Is the St. Lawrence crossed in winter? What takes place when a *pont* is formed? Why do the ferrymen try to prevent this? What has been remarked at Quebec? What effect will the extension of railroads have upon Quebec?
16. What is the Huron name for Quebec? Did all the Indians call it by this name? How did Charlevoix regard it? Give another derivation of the name. What does Champlain say?
17. In what light must this fortress be viewed? Where are the Plains of Abraham? Are there any Indians near Quebec? What is said of them? What are their pursuits? Have they any means of instruction? In what state are they at present?
18. Where is the Fall of Montmorency? Describe the course of the River. What is the appearance of the Fall? When is it most beautiful?
19. Where is the Island of Orleans situated? What gives the chief charm to the scenery? What is said of them?
20. Where do the waters of the St. Lawrence become salt? How is the mouth of the St. Lawrence bounded? What River and Bay divide Canada from New Brunswick? What tribe of Indians is here? Are they numerous at present? What is their present condition?
21. How wide is the St. Lawrence at the mouth? What is said of Anticosti?
22. What Counties are on the Southern Shore? What is said of the hills? What is said of the mountains? What is said of the level tract of land? Which is the most populous parish below Quebec? What is said of the Seigniories? What is said of the Townships?
23. In what state is the Northern Shore? What exceptions are mentioned?
24. What is said of Tadousac? What is said of the Saguenay? Mention the remarkable depth of the Saguenay. Where is Ha! Ha! Bay? From what circumstance does it derive its name? How did they proceed? What is Chicoutimi now? How far does the navigation extend? What interrupts the course of the River? What is the Indian account of them? Can these rapids be avoided? What number of wandering Indians are there?
25. What is said of the Saguenay? What fall is found in it? What is said of the climate? To whom is Government opening this beautiful District? What vestiges of the French settlers still remain here?

26. Mention the Island above Isle aux Coudres. Mention the Island below it. What is said of the settlement here ?
27. Is the climate of Canada East healthy ? What is said of the winter ? What is said of the traveling ? What is said of the appearance of the country ? What is said of the summer and autumn ? What part of the Province has the mildest climate ?
28. What differenee exists between this and European countries ? How does the summer of Quebec differ from that of Edinburgh ? How are agricultural productions affected ? What advantages do we possess ? Give an example. Mention another proof of this fact. Repeat some lines written on this beautiful country by a Canadian ?
29. What is the state of Canada with regard to Religion ? What is said of Education ?
30. How is Canada governed ? What is necessary before laws can be binding ?
31. To what has the number of members of the Legislative Assembly been raised ? What is contemplated ?
32. How is Canada East divided ? How are these Districts subdivided ? What is contemplated ?
33. What was the population of the (3) cities of Upper Canada in 1851 ? Tell the relative population of the (20) towns.
34. What was the population of Montreal and Quebec in 1851 ? State the population of Three Rivers, St. Hyacinthe, Sorel, St. John's, and Sherbrooke.

TABLE OF PROPER NAMES.

At the request of the Publisher, Mr. Gibson, M. A., of the High School of Montreal, has drawn up the following Table of the principal Proper Names in the foregoing History, in the hope that Pupils may find it serviceable in removing any uncertainty in regard to their correct pronunciation. He has divided the Names into their constituent syllables, marked the accent, and adapted the spelling (within parentheses) as nearly as possible to the sound wherever the pronunciation differs materially from the orthography. In general the silent letters are printed in *italics*.

A-ben'a-quais (kays).
A'bra-ham.
A-cā'di-a.
A-chille' (kil).
Ai-guil'lon.
Aille'bout (boo).
Aix-la-Cha-pelle' (Sha-).
Al'ba-ny.
Al-be-marle'.
Al-gon'quins (kins).
Al'le-gha-ny.
Al-li-gou-an'tan (goo).
Al'lu-mets.
Al'ly-on.
Am'wick (An'nic).
A-mer'i-ca.
A-mer'i-go.
Am'-herst-burg.
An'cas-ter.
An-jou' (Awng-zhoo').
An-ti-cos'ti.
Ar-gen'-son (gzawng').
Ar-gen-teu-il' (gzawng).
Ar'-is-totle.
Ar-kan'sas or
Ar-kan-sas' (saw).
Ar'nold.
Ath-a-bas'ca or
Ath-a-pes'cow.
Ath'ol.
At-ti-gou-an'tan (goo).
Au'-gus-tine.
Aux-Sa'bles (o-sawbl).
A-van-gour'.
Ayl'mer.

Bag'ot.
Ba-hā'-ma.
Bar-thol'o-mew.
Bat-is-can'.
Bath'urst.
Beau-har'no-is (Bo-har'-no-aw)
Beau'port (Bo'por).
Beau'pre.

Beau-so-leil'.
Be-can-cour' (coor).
Behr'ing.
Belle-isle' (Bel-eel').
Bel-oeil' (Ile).
Ber'-thi-er (Ber'tche-ay).
Bi-got'.
Bi-zarre'.
Blen'heim.
Blon-deau' (do).
Bou-chette' (sh).
Bour-gain-ville' (Boor).
Bour'-geois (gzhay).
Brant'ford.
Bret'on.
Brit'ta-ny.
Brock'ville.
Bu'ade.
Buf'fa-lo.
Bur-goyne.
Bur'-ling-ton.
By'town.

Caen (Cawng).
Cald'well.
Cal-e-do'ni-a.
Cal'vin-ist.
Cam'bridge (Caim).
Can'a-da.
Ca-nā'-di-an.
Ca-na'di-en (ang).
Ca-nā'ries.
Car'i-gnac.
Car'il-lon, (Car'i-ong).
Carle'-ton.
Car-o-li'na.
Car'ti-er (tche-ay).
Cas'pi-an.
Cas-cades'.
Cat-a-raq'ui (we).
Cath'ay.
Cath'cart.
Cath'o-lic.
Caugh-na-wa'ga (Kak-waw).
Cay-u'ga.

Cha-leurs' (Sha).
Cham-bly' (Sh) (blee).
Cham-plain' (Sh).
Charle-vo'ix (Sharl-vo'aw).
Cha-teau-guay' (Sha-to-guee').
Chat'ham.
Chau-di-ère' (Sho).
Chausse'-gros (Shos).
Chau'vin (Sho).
Ches'nau (Kes'no).
Chi-cout'i-mi (She-coot'e-me).
Chin-qua-cou'sy (cy.)
Chip'pe-wa.
Cho'i-seul (Sho'aw.)
Chris'to-pher (fer).
Chrys'ler.
Co'bourg.
Col'bert.
Col'borne.
Co'li-gny (lee'ghnee).
Co-lum'bi-a.
Con'de (day).
Cor-do'va.
Cor-ne'li-us.
Corn'wall.
Cot'eau-du-Lac, (Cot'o).
Cour-celles' (Coor-sell').

Dal-hous'ie (houz).
Del'a-ware.
De-non-ville'.
De-tro'it (tro'aw).
Di'a-mond.
Di-eppe'.
Do-min'go.
Don-na-co'na.
Dor'ches-ter.
Dum-fries'.
Dun-das'.
Dur'ham.

Ed'in-burgh.
E-liz'a-beth.
El'lice.
E'rie.

Etch'emin (Esh'maing).
Eu'gene.
Eu'rope.
Eu-ro-pe'an.
Ex-u'ma.

Fen'e-lon (long).
Fer-di-nan'do.
Fish'-kile.
Flem'ish.
Flor'en-tine.
Flor'i-da.
Fon-taine-bleau' (blo.)
Frob'ish-er.
Fron'te-nac.

Ga-mache' (mash).
Gal-is-so-ni-ère'.
Gan-a-no'que.
Gas'co-ny.
Gas'pe.
Gen'o-a.
Geor'gi-a (Jor').
Ger'main.
Gib-ral'tar.
Gi-o-van'ni.
Glen-gar'ry.
God'er-ich (itch).
Green'wich.
Guan-a-ha'ni.
Guelph (Gwelf).

Hak'luyt.
Hal'di-mand,
Hal'i-fax.
Ham'il-ton.
Hamp'ton.
Hav'i-land.
Hay'ti (te).
His-pa-ni-o'la.
Hoch-e-la'ga (Hosh).
Hoch'e-lai (Hosh.)
Hon'fleur (Hong).
Hop'i-tal des Soeurs.
Hud'son.
Hu'gue-not.
Hum'ber-ton.
Hun'ga-ry.
Hun'ting-don.
Hu'ron.

Il'li-nois (nay).
In-di-a'na.
Ir'o-quois (Kay).
Isle-aux-Noix (Eel-o-No'aw).
Is'ra-el-ite (Iz.)

Jer'sey (ze).
Jes'u-it (Jez.)
Jon-caire'.
Jon-qui-ère' (ke-aire).
Ju-mon-ville'.

Kam-ou-ras'ka.
Kempt.
Ken'ne-bec.
Ken-tuc'ky.
Kings'ton.
Kin'nel.

Lab-ra-dor'.
La-chine' (sheen).
La Cloche (closh).
La-dro'nes.
Lan'cas-ter.
La-prai'rie.
L'Isle't (L'Eel'yay).
Liv'ing-ston.
Long'ueil (Long).
Lo-rette'.
L'Or-i-gnal'.
Lot-bi-nière.
Lou-is-i-a'na.
Lov'at (Luv.)

McDon'ell.
Mac-Ken'zie.
Ma-gel'lan.
Mai-son-neuve'.
Mait'land.

Man-hat'tan.
Mansi tou-aw'ming.
Man-i-tou'lin.
Mar-quette' (ket).
Mas-ki-non'ge.
Mas-sa-chu'setts (tchoo).
Matth'ew.
Me-gan'tic.
Me-len'dez.
Mem-phre-mā'-gog, *or* Mem-phrem'-a-gog (frem.)
Men-e-set'u-ah.
Mes-sas-sa'gu-a.
Met'calfe (calf).
Meth'-o-dist.
Mich'i-gan (Mish).
Mi-chil-li-mac'ki-nac.
Mid'dle-sex.
Mir-a-mi-chi' (shee).
Mis-sis-sip'pi (pe).
Mis-sou'ri (soo).
Mis-tas'sin.
Mo-bile' (beel).
Mo-hawk'.
Mon-go'li-an.
Mont-calm (Mong-cawm').
Mon-te-zu'ma.
Mont-gom'e-ry (gum).
Mont-ma'gny (Mong).
Mont-mo-ren'cy.
Mon-tre-al'.
Mo-rā'vi-an.
Mor'ri-son.
Mun-sees'.

Nap-a-nee'.
Na-po'le-on.
Nar'va-ez.
Nep'-is-sing *or* Ne-pis'sing.
Neth'er-lands.
New-found'land.
Ni-ag'a-ra.
Nor'man-dy.
Not-ta-wa-sa'ga.
Nou-velle' (Noo').

O'dell-town.
Og'dens-burg.
O-hi'o.
O-nei'da.
O-nin'thi-o.
O-non-da'ga.
On-tā'ri-o.
Or'leans.
O-swe'go.
O-ton-a-hee'.
Ot'ta-wa.
Ou-re-on-ha're.

Pak'en-ham.
Pa'los.
Pam'li-co.
Pap'i-neau (no).
Peg'a-sus.
Pen-e-tan'-gui-shine (sheen).
Penn-syl-vā'ni-a.
Pen-ob'scot.
Per'e-grine.
Phil-a-del'phi-a (Fil-fe).
Phipps (Fips).
Pic-tou'.
Pi-erre'.
Platts'burg.
Plym'outh.
Pointe-aux-Trem'bles (Po-angt-o-Trang'ble).
Pont-gra've (ay).
Pot-ta-wa-ta'mies.
Pres'cott.
Pres-qu'Isle' (Pres-k'Eel).
Pre-vost.
Pri-deaux' (do).
Prot'es-tant.

Que-bec'.
Queens'ton.
Quesne (Cane).
Quin'te.

Ral'eigh.
Ram'i-lies.

Rans-se-la'er.
Rec'ol-let (lay.)
Re-pen-ti'gny (tee).
Rhode.
Ri-bault' (bo).
Riche'lieu.
Rid'eau (o).
Ri-mous'-ki (moos).
Ris-ti-gouche' (goosh).
Ro-a-noke'.
Rob-er-val'.
Ro-chelle' (shel).
Ro'ches-ter.
Ro'si-er (ay).
Rot'ten-burg.
Ron deau' (o).
Rou'en (awng).
Rouge (Roozh).
Rous-sel-lon' (long).
Rou'ville.
Rys'wick.

Sac'kett's.
Sag'ue-nay.
Sal'a-ber-ry.
Sal'i-gnac.
Sal'va-dor.
Sand'wich.
Sar-a-to'ga.
Sa-van'nah.
Sau-geen'.
Sault (So).
Sche-nec'ta-dy (Ske).
Sea'ton.
Se-bas'ti-an.
Sel'borne.
Sen'e-ca.
Se-vi le'.
Shaw-en'a-gam.
Shaw-mees'.
Sher'brooke.
Sil'le-ry.
Sim'coe.
Sois-sons' (Swaw-song').
Som'ers.
So-rel'.
Sta-da-co'na.
St. Ben'oit (waw).
Croix (Cro'aw).
Den'is.
Eu-stache'.
Hy-a-cinthe.
I-gnace.
Law'rence.
Lou'is.
Mau'rice.
Scho-las-tique, (teek).
Sul'pice' (peece).
Su-pe'ri-or.
Syd'en-ham.

Ta-bas'co.
Tad'ou-sac.
Te-cum'-seh.
Tem-is-cam'ing.
Terre-bonne'.
Thames (Tems).
Ti-con-de-ro'ga.
Tim-is-cou-a'ta.
To-ron'to.
Tours (Toor).
Tra'cy.
Tus-co-ro'ras.
Ty-en-de-na'ga.

Ur'su-la.
U'-trecht.

Van-cou'ver.
Va-rennes'.
Vau-dreuil' (drl).
Vel-as'quez.
Ven-ta-dour.
Ver-cheres' (sh).
Ver-mont'.
Ver-ra-za'ni.
Ves-puc'ci-o (pook'tche-o).
Vin'cent.
Vir-gin'i-a.
Vol'ti-geurs.

Wal'-pole.
Wal'-sing-ham.
War'bur-ton.
Wash'ing-ton.
Wa-ter-loo'.
Wel'land.
We-quam'a-kong.
Wes-ley'an.
West'min-ster.
Weth'er-all.
Wil'ming-ton.
Win'ni-peg.
Wis-con'sin.
Wy-an'dots.

Yamas'ka.
Yonge (Yung).
Yu-ca-tan'.

UNIV. OF MICHIGAN,

JUL 2 1912

Prize School Books.

The Subscriber obtained Diplomas at the Provincial Exhibitions, held at Montreal and Hamilton, in 1853, "For the best collection of School Books printed and bound in Canada."

NATIONAL SERIES.

General Lesson, to be hung up in Schools.
First Book of Lessons.
Second Book of Lessons.
Sequel to the Second Book.
Third Book of Lessons.
Fourth Book of Lessons.
Fifth Book of Lessons.
First Book of Arithmetic and Key.
English Grammar and Key.
Book-keeping and Key.
Treatise on Mensuration.
Appendix to Mensuration, for the use of Teachers.
Elements of Geometry.
Introduction to Geography and History, with Maps, Plates, &c., new edition, much improved.

Large coloured Maps for School Rooms.

CURRICULUM LATINUM.

Cornelius Nepos.
Virgilii Georgica.
Cicero de Amicitia.
Cicero de Senectute.
Ovidii Fasti.
Cæsar de Bello Gallico.
Q. Curtius.
Taciti Agricola.
Horatii Carmina.

Price 7½d. to 1s. 3d. each.

CHEAP SCHOOL BOOKS.

The Canadian Primer.
Manson's Primer.
Mavor's Spelling Book.
Carpenter's Spelling Book.
Webster's Spelling Book.
Walker's Dictionary.
Lennie's Grammar.
Murray's English Reader.
Murray's Large English Grammar.
Murray's Small ditto.
Walkingame's Arithmetic.
The History of Canada.
Do. in French.
History of England.
The History of Rome.
Geography of Canada.
Quarter Dollar Atlas.
Scripture Atlas.

CATECHISMS, &c.

The Shorter Catechism, with and without Proofs.
The Mother's Catechism, containing common things necessary to be known at an early age.
The Second Catechism, being a Sequel to the First.
The Child's Own Prayer Book.
Catechism of Geography.
Catechism for the Instruction of Communicants of the Lord's Supper, by the late Dr. Andrew Thomson.

H. RAMSAY.

PAPER, ACCOUNT BOOKS, STATIONERY, &c.

THE SUBSCRIBER has always on hand ample stocks of all kinds of plain and ruled WRITING PAPERS, also DRAWING PAPERS, Drawing Boards of all sizes, and Artists' and Engineers' materials, in great variety. He has likewise on hand, or makes to order in any style of ruling and binding, Ledgers, Journals, Day Books, and other Mercantile ACCOUNT BOOKS.

SCHOOL REQUISITES.

The Subscriber begs to draw attention to his stock of Globes, Outlined Maps for School Rooms, cheap Atlasses, Copy Books, Slates, Mathematical Instruments, &c., which will be found good in quality and reasonable in price.

WRITING PAPERS, &c.

Whatman's and Wilmot's Superfine, Imperial, Super Royal, Royal Medium and Demy Writing Papers; also, Blue and Yellow Wove Folio, Large and Small Posts, Folio, Medium Bank Post, &c.

POST AND NOTE PAPER.—Fine and Superfine, Large and Small, Thick Laid, Yellow and Blue Wove Post, of the best makes, Cream Laid Post, Fine and Superfine, Large and Small, Thin Laid Yellow and Blue Wove Posts; Superfine Small Thick Yellow Wove, Glazed,

WRITING PAPER, &c.

and Gilt Post; Superfine Laid Yellow and Blue Wove Note Paper; Extra Large Thin Post,—also, the same of Parisian make for Foreign Correspondence in great variety; Extra Satin Post Paper; Black Edged and Black Bordered Post and Note Paper, various breadths. —Post, with Engraved Views of Montreal, Quebec, Kingston, Niagara, &c. &c.

MISCELLANEOUS STATIONERY.

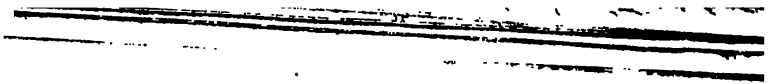
Wax, Wafers, Ink, Quills, Steel Pens, Penknives, Music and Drawing Books, and every article in the line.

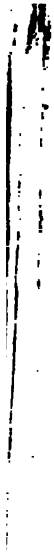
PRINTING.

Books, Pamphlets, &c., executed with neatness and despatch

H. RAMSAY.

MONTREAL.






UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGA
3 9015 05947 4224

